

TRÚC LINH

BỘ ĐỀ LUYỆN THI HỌC KỲ I

# TIẾNG ANH

LỚP

8

CHƯƠNG TRÌNH MỚI

- Giải thích chi tiết, rõ ràng
- Bài tập đa dạng phong phú
- Tài liệu cần thiết cho học sinh và giáo viên
- DỰA THEO MÔ HÌNH TRƯỜNG HỌC MỚI TẠI VIỆT NAM (VNEN)



SACHHOC.COM



SACHHOC.COM

TRÚC LINH

**BỘ ĐỀ LUYỆN THI HỌC KỲ I  
MÔN TIẾNG ANH 8**

**CHƯƠNG TRÌNH MỚI**

## UNIT 1: LEISURE ACTIVITIES

### Hoạt động giải trí

#### A. VOCABULARY

|                                                   |                           |                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. adore (v)                                      | /ə'dɔː/:                  | yêu thích, mê thích                  |
| 2. addicted (adj)                                 | /ə'dɪktɪd/:               | nghiện (thích) cái gì                |
| 3. beach game (n)                                 | /bi:tʃ geɪm/:             | trò thể thao trên bãi biển           |
| 4. bracelet (n)                                   | /'breɪslət/:              | vòng đeo tay                         |
| 5. communicate (v)                                | /kə'mju:nɪkeɪt/:          | giao tiếp                            |
| 6. community centre (n)                           | /kə'mju:nəti 'sentə/:     | trung tâm văn hoá cộng đồng          |
| 7. craft (n)                                      | /kra:ft/:                 | đồ thủ công                          |
| 8. craft kit (n)                                  | /kra:ft kɪt/:             | bộ dụng cụ làm thủ công              |
| 9. cultural event (n)                             | /'kʌltʃərəl ɪ'vent/:      | sự kiện văn hoá                      |
| 10. detest (v)                                    | /dɪ'test/:                | ghét                                 |
| 11. DIY (n)                                       | /di: aɪ 'waɪ/:            | đồ tự làm, tự sửa                    |
| 12. don't mind (v)                                | /dəʊnt maɪnd/:            | không ngại, không ghét lắm           |
| 13. hang out (v)                                  | /hæŋ aʊt/:                | đi chơi với bạn bè                   |
| 14. hooked on (adj)=keen on=fond of=interested in |                           | yêu thích cái gì                     |
| 15. It's right up my street! (idiom)              | /ɪts raɪt ʌp maɪ stri:t/: | Đúng vị của tôi!                     |
| 16. join (v)                                      | /dʒɔɪn/:                  | tham gia                             |
| 17. leisure (n)                                   | /'leɪʒə/:                 | sự thư giãn nghỉ ngơi                |
| 18. leisure activity (n)                          | /'leɪʒə æk'tɪvəti/:       | hoạt động thư giãn nghỉ ngơi         |
| 19. leisure time (n)                              | /'leɪʒə taɪm/:            | thời gian thư giãn nghỉ ngơi         |
| 20. netlingo (n)                                  | /net'ɪŋɡəʊ/:              | ngôn ngữ dùng để giao tiếp trên mạng |
| 21. people watching (n)                           | /'pi:pl wɒtʃɪŋ/:          | ngắm người qua lại                   |
| 22. relax (v)                                     | /rɪ'læks/:                | thư giãn                             |
| 23. satisfied (adj)                               | /'sætɪsfaid/:             | hài lòng                             |
| 24. socialise (v)                                 | /'səʊʃalaɪz/:             | giao tiếp để tạo mối quan hệ         |
| 25. weird (adj)                                   | /wɪəd/:                   | kì cục                               |
| 26. window shopping (n)                           | /'wɪndəʊ 'ʃɒpɪŋ/:         | đi chơi ngắm đồ bày ở cửa hàng       |
| 27. virtual (adj)                                 | /'vɜ:ʃʊəl/:               | ảo (chỉ có ở trên mạng)              |

#### B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

#### CÁC ĐỘNG TỪ DIỄN ĐẠT SỰ YÊU THÍCH (VERBS OF LIKING)

##### 1. VERBS OF LIKING:

| Động từ             | Nghĩa             |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| Adore               | Yêu thích, mê mẩn |
| Love                | Yêu               |
| Like/ enjoy/ fancy  | Thích             |
| Don't mind          | Không phiền       |
| Dislike/ don't like | Không thích       |
| Hate                | Ghét              |
| Detest              | Căm ghét          |

##### 2. VERBS OF LIKING + V-ing / TO V:

-Khi muốn dùng một động từ chỉ một hàng động khác ở sau động từ chỉ sự thích, ta phải sử dụng danh động từ (V-ing) hoặc động từ nguyên thể có "to" (toV)

##### 1. Verbs + V-ing/ to V

Những động từ đi với cả danh động từ và động từ nguyên thể có "to" mà không đổi về nghĩa

| Verbs | Verbs + V-ing                        | Verbs +to V                          |
|-------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Like  | I like skateboarding in my free time | I like to skateboard in my free time |
| Love  | She loves training her dog           | She loves to train her dog           |

|        |                                 |                                 |
|--------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Hate   | He hates eating out             | He hates to eat out             |
| Prefer | My mother prefers going jogging | My mother prefers to go jogging |

## 2. Verbs + V-ing

Những động từ chỉ đi với danh động từ

| Verbs      | Verbs + V-ing               |
|------------|-----------------------------|
| Adore      | They adore eating ice-cream |
| Fancy      | Do you fancy making crafts? |
| Don't mind | I don't mind cooking        |
| Dislike    | Does he dislike swimming?   |
| Detest     | I detest doing housework    |

## **BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN:**

**Bài 1: Hoàn thành những câu sau, sử dụng dạng nguyên thể có (to)(toV) của động từ trong ngoặc:**

1. Everyone likes (eat) \_\_\_\_\_ ice cream.
2. Do you prefer (read) books in your freetime?
3. I hate (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ horror movies?
4. Many people prefer (go) \_\_\_\_\_ travelling on holidays.
5. My father loves (play) \_\_\_\_\_ golf with his friends.
6. I prefer (not stay) \_\_\_\_\_ up too late.
7. What does your sister love (do) \_\_\_\_\_ in her spare time?
8. I used to prefer (hang out) \_\_\_\_\_ with my friends at weekend.
9. I think not many people like (listen) \_\_\_\_\_ to her music.
10. Teenagers love (surf) \_\_\_\_\_ the web to while away their freetime.

**Bài 2: Hoàn thành những câu sau, sử dụng dạng danh động từ (V-ing) của động từ trong ngoặc:**

1. My mother dislikes (prepare) \_\_\_\_\_ the meals.
2. Do you enjoy (do) \_\_\_\_\_ DIY in your freetime?
3. I detest (have) \_\_\_\_\_ a conversation with John.
4. Do you think Jane prefers (not socialise) \_\_\_\_\_ with other students?
5. I don't mind (explain) \_\_\_\_\_ the problem again.
6. Ann fancies (listen) \_\_\_\_\_ to songs of her favourite singer.
7. My friend adores (spend) \_\_\_\_\_ time with her cats.
8. I always love (try) \_\_\_\_\_ new things when I go travelling.
9. Mr. Smith hates (drive) \_\_\_\_\_ his old car.
10. Anne prefers (not go) \_\_\_\_\_ out too late.

**Bài 3: Điền dạng thích hợp của động từ trong ngoặc để hoàn thành các câu sau:**

1. Did you enjoy (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ the comedy last night?
2. Many people prefer (do) \_\_\_\_\_ gardening after their retirement.
3. My cat dislikes (sleep) \_\_\_\_\_ on the floor.
4. My father doesn't mind (work) \_\_\_\_\_ hard.
5. My cousin doesn't like (study) \_\_\_\_\_ Math and Chemistry.
6. They dislike (talk) \_\_\_\_\_ with each other.
7. Jim and Jane don't fancy (go) \_\_\_\_\_ out tomorrow.
8. Did you hate (eat) \_\_\_\_\_ vegetables when you was small?
9. she didn't prefer (tell) \_\_\_\_\_ him about her plan.
10. James enjoys (have) \_\_\_\_\_ dinner in a luxury restaurant.
11. I hope my mother will enjoy (spend) \_\_\_\_\_ time with her grandchildren.
12. Some people enjoy (take) \_\_\_\_\_ a shower in the morning.



13. I think your brother won't mind (lend) \_\_\_\_\_ you a helping hand.  
 14. My boyfriend dislike (wait) \_\_\_\_\_.  
 15. What do you detest (do) \_\_\_\_\_ the most?

**Bài 4: Dưa vào các từ cho sẵn, viết thành câu hoàn chỉnh:**

1. Peter/ prefer/ play/ computer games/ in his free time.

2. You/ hate/ do/ the washing?

3. My father/ enjoy/ play/ sports/ and/ read/ books.

4. The teacher/ not mind/ help/ you/ with difficult exercises.

5. Jane/ not fancy/ read/ science books.

6. Which kind of juice/ you/ dislike/ drink/ the most?

7. Ann/ fancy/ do /DIY/ in her free time.

8. My father/ prefer/ not eat/ out.

9. Mr. Smith/ love/ go/ shopping/ at weekend.

10. Everyone/ adore/ receive/ presents/ on their birthday.

**BÀI TẬP VĂN DUNG NÂNG CAO**

**Bài 5: Đánh dấu(V) trước câu đúng, đánh dấu(X) trước câu sai và sửa lại cho đúng:**

1. My sister doesn't mind to look after my cat.
2. Jim dislikes going to the library because he likes reading books.
3. I prefer to not go out today.
4. I used to like watching cartoons on TV.
5. Does Mrs. Smith enjoy to cook?
6. Mary hates doing the housework and take after her baby sister.
7. In my freetime, I love to do DIY with my sister.
8. Josh detests to socialise with his co-workers.
9. Which movie does he fancy to watch?
10. I prefer hanging out with friends to playing computer games.

**Bài 6: Điền dạng đúng của các động từ cho sẵn vào chỗ trống sao cho hợp lý:**

|           |        |       |          |
|-----------|--------|-------|----------|
| socialize | detest | Surf  | Write    |
| rely      | read   | Adore | Hang out |

1. My brother likes \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet looking for new music.
2. I dislike \_\_\_\_\_ too much on other people. I want to be independent.
3. Josh enjoys \_\_\_\_\_ with his classmates after school.
4. My sister and I fancy \_\_\_\_\_ novels when we have free time.
5. He's very artistic. He enjoys \_\_\_\_\_ poems in his free time.
6. James \_\_\_\_\_ talking with his neighbors because he finds them annoying.
7. My uncles loves \_\_\_\_\_ with other people . he has many friends.
8. Ann \_\_\_\_\_ working with children. She's a teacher.

**Bài 7: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng:**

Nowadays, leisure activities are totally different from the past. Many people no longer enjoy(1) ----- in outdoor activities after school. In stead, they(2) \_\_\_\_\_ playing computer games or (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the web in their free time. Some people (4) \_\_\_\_\_ too much on computer and the Internet. For example, they prefer(5) \_\_\_\_\_ messages to having a face-to-face conversation with friends. Even when people (6) \_\_\_\_\_ out with their friends, they rarely talk but they use their phones to surf web. However, many people dislike the Internet and the(7) \_\_\_\_\_ world. They hate to waste time on the computer and(8) \_\_\_\_\_ other activities such as reading, shopping or sporting.

- |                   |                   |                  |                 |
|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. participate | B. to participate | C. participating | D. participates |
| 2. A. fancy       | B. don't mind     | C. dislike       | D. hate         |
| 3. A. sailing     | B. surfing        | C. swimming      | D. diving       |
| 4. A. play        | B. rely           | C. addict        | D. use          |
| 5. A. send        | B. to send        | C. to sending    | D. sends        |
| 6. A. play        | B. rely           | C. meet          | D. hang         |
| 7. A. virtual     | B. real           | C. fake          | D. new          |
| 8. A. dislike     | B. detest         | C. enjoy         | D. mind         |

**Bài 8: Đọc đoạn văn sau và điền (T-true) trước câu đúng với nội dung bài đọc , điền (F-false) trước câu không đúng với nội dung bài đọc:**

#### LEISURE ACTIVITIES IN BRITAIN

The weekends area a time for many leisure activities in Britain. British people often have to work five days a week from Monday to Friday is the precious time for family and friends. People enjoy various indoor and outdoor activities in Britain. According to the EU's statistical office, British people spend abot 45% of their free time watching television, 24% of their free time socialising , 22-23% on sport and hobbies, and 10% on other activities. Other popular leisure activities are listening to the radio, listening to pre-recorded music, reading, DIY, garedning, eating out and going to the cinema.

The most common leisure activity in the UK is watching television. The average viewing time is 25 hours per person per week. Almost all households have at least one television set. The second most popular activity in Britain is visiting or entertaining friends or relations. Another popular leisure activity is gardening. The British are known as a nation of gardeners. Most people have a garden on their property. Every town in Britain has one or more DIY centers and garden centres. These are like supermarkets for the home and garden. These places are very popular with British home-owners at the weekends.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. People enjoy various indoor activities Britain.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. British people spend more than half of their free time watching television.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The most common leisure activity in the UK is visiting or entertaining friends or relations.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. All house holds have at least one television set.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. British people are all gardeners.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. All towns in Britain have one or more DIY centers and garden centres.

#### TEST 1 UNIT 1

**I. Find the word which has different sound in the part underlined.**

- |                         |                     |                       |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. laugh <u>e</u> d  | B. wash <u>e</u> d  | C. danc <u>e</u> d    | D. play <u>e</u> d  |
| 2. A. bed <u>s</u>      | B. dog <u>s</u>     | C. port <u>e</u> rs   | D. book <u>s</u>    |
| 3. A. pictur <u>e</u> s | B. watch <u>e</u> s | C. bus <u>e</u> s     | D. brush <u>e</u> s |
| 4. A. hom <u>e</u> work | B. moth <u>e</u> r  | C. op <u>e</u> n      | D. judo             |
| 5. A. le <u>i</u> sure  | B. e <u>i</u> ght   | C. cel <u>e</u> brate | D. pen <u>a</u> lty |
| 6. A. f <u>u</u> n      | B. s <u>u</u> n     | C. s <u>u</u> rf      | D. c <u>u</u> t     |
| 7. A. brac <u>e</u> let | B. cak <u>e</u>     | C. mak <u>e</u>       | D. h <u>a</u> t     |
| 8. A. althoug <u>h</u>  | B. laugh            | C. paragr <u>a</u> ph | D. enoug <u>h</u>   |
| 9. A. comed <u>y</u>    | B. lett <u>e</u> r  | C. princ <u>e</u> ss  | D. cin <u>e</u> ma  |
| 10. A. hig <u>h</u>     | B. sig <u>h</u> t   | C. th <u>i</u> s      | D. f <u>i</u> nd    |
| 11. A. stopp <u>e</u> d | B. agre <u>e</u> d  | C. list <u>e</u> ned  | D. clean <u>e</u> d |

12. A. meat                      B. seat                      C. great                      D. mean  
 13. A. call                      B. land                      C. fall                      D. ball  
 14. A. rather                      B. them                      C. neither                      D. think

**II. Choose the words that have the different stress from the others.**

1. A. satisfied                      B. socialize                      C. volunteer                      D. exercise  
 2. A. information                      B. technology                      C. community                      D. activity  
 3. A. library                      B. museum                      C. melody                      D. favourite  
 4. A. protection                      B. addicted                      C. computer                      D. goldfish  
 5. A. skateboard                      B. sticker                      C. adore                      D. leisure

**III. Choose the best answer.**

1. My dad doesn't mind \_\_\_\_\_ my mom from work every day.  
 A. pick up                      B. picked up                      C. picking up                      D. picks up  
 2. Using computers too much may have harmful effects \_\_\_\_\_ your minds and bodies.  
 A. on                      B. to                      C. with                      D. onto  
 3. I love the people in my village. They are so \_\_\_\_\_ and hospitable.  
 A. friendly                      B. vast                      C. slow                      D. inconvenient  
 4. Among the \_\_\_\_\_, the Tay people have the largest population.  
 A. groups                      B. majorities                      C. ethnic minorities                      D. ethnic cultures.  
 5. People in the countryside live \_\_\_\_\_ than those in the city.  
 A. happy                      B. more happily                      C. happily                      D. less happy  
 6. Viet Nam is \_\_\_\_\_ multicultural country with 54 ethnic groups.  
 A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. A and C  
 7. We \_\_\_\_\_ to the countryside two months ago.  
 A. go                      B. have gone                      C. went                      D. will go  
 8. What will you do if you \_\_\_\_\_ the final examinations?  
 A. will pass                      B. would pass                      C. pass                      D. passed  
 9. It rained hard. \_\_\_\_\_, my father went to work.  
 A. Therefore                      B. However                      C. Because                      D. So  
 10. Your sister writes poems and stories, \_\_\_\_\_ she?  
 A. does                      B. doesn't                      C. will                      D. won't  
 11. Laura fell asleep during the lesson \_\_\_\_\_ she was tired.  
 A. so                      B. but                      C. because                      D. therefore  
 12. How much \_\_\_\_\_ do you want?  
 A. bananas                      B. eggs                      C. candies                      D. sugar  
 13. Tomorrow the director will have a meeting \_\_\_\_\_ 8:00 am to 10:00 am.  
 A. between                      B. from                      C. among                      D. in  
 14. We will start our trip \_\_\_\_\_ 6 o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.  
 A. in / in                      B. at / in                      C. in / at                      D. at / at  
 15. We \_\_\_\_\_ anything from James since we left school.  
 A. haven't heard                      B. heard                      C. don't hear                      D. didn't hear  
 16. You have lived in this city since 1998, \_\_\_\_\_?  
 A. haven't you                      B. didn't you                      C. did you                      D. have you  
 17. My students enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ English very much.  
 A. learn                      B. learnt                      C. learning                      D. to learn

**IV. Give the correct form of the following verbs.**

1. Mai enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ crafts, especially bracelets. (make)  
 2. \_\_\_\_\_ you ever \_\_\_\_\_ a buffalo? (ride)  
 3. The children used to \_\_\_\_\_ a long way to school. (go)  
 4. They hate \_\_\_\_\_ their son texting his friends all day. (see)  
 5. Do you fancy \_\_\_\_\_ in the park this Sunday? (skateboard)

**V. Complete the sentences with the verb + -ing.**

|    |    |      |     |      |       |
|----|----|------|-----|------|-------|
| do | go | play | ski | swim | watch |
|----|----|------|-----|------|-------|

1. Susan hates \_\_\_\_\_ boxing but she loves football.

- I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ in the pool at the sports centre.
- Does she like \_\_\_\_\_ shopping in the supermarket?
- Peter loves \_\_\_\_\_ judo.
- They enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ the Olympics on TV.
- My brother and I really like \_\_\_\_\_ in the Alps in February.

**VI. Match a word in column A with its antonym in column B.**

| A              | B               | Answer    |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------|
| 1. slim        | a. shy          | 1. _____  |
| 2. careful     | b. boring       | 2. _____  |
| 3. quiet       | c. short        | 3. _____  |
| 4. interesting | d. hard-working | 4. _____  |
| 5. generous    | e. careless     | 5. _____  |
| 6. curly       | f. fat          | 6. _____  |
| 7. beautiful   | g. noisy        | 7. _____  |
| 8. lazy        | h. selfish      | 8. _____  |
| 9. tall        | i. straight     | 9. _____  |
| 10. confident  | j. ugly         | 10. _____ |

**VII. Supply the correct form of the words in brackets.**

- People in my country are very warm and \_\_\_\_\_. (FRIEND)
- An \_\_\_\_\_ is a child whose parents are dead. (ORPHANAGE)
- L.A Hill is a \_\_\_\_\_ writer. (HUMOR)
- I'm \_\_\_\_\_ sorry for the delay. (EXTREME)
- She looks more \_\_\_\_\_ than her sister. (BEAUTY)
- I am \_\_\_\_\_ enough to have a lot of friends. (LUCK)
- They enjoy the \_\_\_\_\_ summer evenings in the countryside. (PEACE)
- Those cats look \_\_\_\_\_. (LOVE)
- It was \_\_\_\_\_ of him to offer to pay for us both. (GENEROUSITY)
- Role-play is \_\_\_\_\_ in developing communication skills. (HELP)

**VIII. Fill in the blanks with suitable prepositions: "in, at, on, after, under, between, beside, out of, above, beneath".**

- There is a bus station ..... the end of this road.
- Keep those medicines ..... the children's reach.
- I lost my keys somewhere ..... the car and the house.
- Come ..... and sit ..... your sister.
- D comes ..... C in the alphabet.
- The boat sank ..... the waves.
- Don't shelter ..... the trees when it's raining.
- Please put these books ..... the bookshelf ..... the desk.

**IX. Read the passage, and then decide whether the statements that follow are True (T) or False (F).**

In my opinion, using the computer as your hobby can be harmful to both your health and your social life. Firstly, sitting all day in front of the computer can cause health problems such as eye-tiredness and obesity. Secondly you may get irritated easily. Besides, if you use the computer too much, you will not have time for your family and friends. In short, computers should only be used for a limited time.

- Using the computer too much can make your eyes tired. 1. \_\_\_\_\_
- Using the computer too much is not good for you. 2. \_\_\_\_\_
- We still can spend a lot of time with our family and friends. 3. \_\_\_\_\_
- According to the writer, we can use the computer for a long time. 4. \_\_\_\_\_
- Computers should only be used for a limited time. 5. \_\_\_\_\_

**X. Read the passage carefully.**

**MY VILLAGE**

I live in a village by Mekong River. Every day, like most of my friends, I walk to school. It is three kilometers away. After class, I often help my mother to collect water from the river and feed the chickens. At the weekend, the villagers often gather at the community hall where there is a TV. The adults watch TV,

but more often they talk about their farm work and exchange news. The children run around playing games and shouting merrily. Laughter is heard everywhere.

My father sometimes takes me to the market town nearby where he sells our home products like vegetables, fruits, eggs... He then buys me an ice cream and lets me take a ride on the electric train in the town square. I love those trips.

On starry nights, we children lie on the grass, looking at the sky and daring each other to find the Milky Way. We dream of faraway places.

**Answer the following questions.**

1. Does the boy like riding on the electric train in the town square?

2. What do the children do on starry nights?

3. Do you like to live in the countryside or in the city? Why?

**XI. Read the following passage and choose the correct answer for each gap.**

I surf the Internet every day, but I've never (1) \_\_\_\_\_ more than an hour at a time online. I've got a laptop and also a smartphone, so I can (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet anywhere. Today, for instance, I've been (3) \_\_\_\_\_ three times.

Mainly I just (4) \_\_\_\_\_ my friends. I read online magazines and I look (5) \_\_\_\_\_ information, too. I also compare prices of things, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ I've never bought anything online because I don't think it's safe.

I'm not an Internet addict, but some of my friends (7) \_\_\_\_\_. One friend of mine always looks (8) \_\_\_\_\_ because he spends all night online. Although he's got a lot of bad marks for the exams, he hasn't (9) \_\_\_\_\_ his habits.

In my experience, it's very useful for people who use the Internet (10) \_\_\_\_\_.

- |                 |              |                 |
|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. spend     | B. spending  | C. spent        |
| 2. A. have      | B. use       | C. play         |
| 3. A. online    | B. Internet  | C. computer     |
| 4. A. write     | B. email     | C. send         |
| 5. A. at        | B. in        | C. for          |
| 6. A. because   | B. but       | C. although     |
| 7. A. is        | B. were      | C. are          |
| 8. A. tired     | B. hard      | C. happily      |
| 9. A. change    | B. to change | C. changed      |
| 10. A. sensible | B. sensibly  | C. sensibleness |

**XII. Put the words in the correct order to make meaningful sentences.**

1. look / does / she / what / like?

=>

2. is / she / as / Mai / easy-going / not / as.

=>

3. classroom / to / they / the / outside / the / prefer.

=>

4. time / I / most / my / with / spend / of / Hoa

=>

5. in / sun / the / rises / East / the

=>

6. a / received / Lan / letter / yesterday / her / from / friend.

=>

7. not / get / is / she / to / old / married / enough.

=>

8. long / is / a / girl / she / with / nice / hair.

=>

**TEST 2 (UNIT 1)**

**I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.**



- |                |          |              |            |
|----------------|----------|--------------|------------|
| 1. A. leisure  | B. eight | C. celebrate | D. penalty |
| 2. A. fun      | B. sun   | C. surf      | D. cut     |
| 3. A. bracelet | B. cake  | C. cave      | D. hat     |
| 4. A. although | B. laugh | C. paragraph | D. enough  |

## II. Leisure activities. Do the following tasks.

**Task 1: Fill in each blank with the verbs below.**

|      |           |       |       |      |    |
|------|-----------|-------|-------|------|----|
| play | listen to | write | watch | have | do |
|------|-----------|-------|-------|------|----|

1. **read:** a newspaper, .....
2. **go:** swimming .....
3. .... : football, .....
4. .... : a letter, .....
5. .... : the radio, .....
6. .... television, .....
7. **go to:** school, .....
8. **visit:** friends, .....
9. .... : nothing, .....
10. .... : a meal, .....

**Task 2: Add these words/phrases from the table to Part A. (There may be more than one possibility.)**

|                    |             |                |              |                     |
|--------------------|-------------|----------------|--------------|---------------------|
| shopping           | a magazine  | the cinema     | an e-mail    | the guitar          |
| CDs                | a video     | computer games | a restaurant | a shower            |
| leisure activities | the library | cousins        | a game show  | music               |
| something          | a quiz show | hiking         | swimming     | an outdoor activity |

## III. Complete the sentences with the verb + -ing.

|    |    |      |     |      |       |
|----|----|------|-----|------|-------|
| do | go | play | ski | swim | watch |
|----|----|------|-----|------|-------|

1. Susan loves \_\_\_\_\_ judo.
2. They enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ the Olympics on TV.
3. We really like \_\_\_\_\_ in the Alps in February.
4. Sam hates \_\_\_\_\_ boxing but he loves football.
5. I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ in the pool at the sports centre.
6. Do you like \_\_\_\_\_ running in the morning?

## IV. Complete the conversations with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- Mai:** I (1. Not like/ watch) \_\_\_\_\_ football. I (2. hate/ stand) \_\_\_\_\_ around and (3. get) \_\_\_\_\_ cold.
- Lan:** Me, too. I (4. Prefer/ be) \_\_\_\_\_ indoors. I (5. not mind/ play) \_\_\_\_\_ football – on my computer!
- Nick:** Ha ha! I know your brother's really good at football, Mai. \_\_\_\_\_ (6. he/ like/ play) at the back?
- Mai:** Tuan? No, he (7. prefer/ play) \_\_\_\_\_ centre forward. He (8. like/ score) \_\_\_\_\_ goals!
- Lan:** Great pass, Tuan!
- Mai:** Lan, do you like football?
- Nick:** No, but she (9. not mind/ watch) \_\_\_\_\_ Tuan!

## V. Read the passage about Phong's weekend and answer the questions.

On Friday's afternoon, after school, I usually surf the Net or listen to music. In the evening I often go to the cinema with my friends.

On Saturday morning I get up late and have breakfast. Then I play football with my classmates in the park. In the afternoon I watch TV (usually a football match). In the evening I go to my best friend's place – we sometimes play computer games, or we talk.

On Sunday morning I do my homework. Then I listen to music or watch TV. On Sunday evening I surf the Net again, or read a book.

1. Where does Phong often go on Friday evening?

2. When does he play football?

3. What does he watch on Saturday afternoon?

4. What does he do on Sunday morning?

5. When does he surf the Net?

**VI. Read the passage carefully, and then answer the question below.**

In the 1970s, skateboarding suddenly became very popular. At first, skateboarders moved slowly on flat, smooth areas. Then they began to ride quickly. This is called 'freestyle' skateboarding. Soon they were skateboarding skillfully up ramps and doing tricks in the air. This is called 'ramp' skateboarding. Then they started skateboarding and doing tricks on the street. This was 'street-style' skateboarding – a combination of freestyle and ramp. For this, the skateboarders needed protective clothing such as knee and elbow pads and helmets. This allowed them to skateboard safely.

Today skateboarding is still a very popular sport, and there are lots of competitions.

**Note:** *skateboarding (n)* = môn trượt ván.

1. When did skateboarding become very popular?

2. What are the three styles of skateboarding?

3. What was 'street-style' skateboarding?

4. Why do 'street-style' skateboarders need protective clothing?

5. Do you think skateboarding is a very popular sport now? Why or why not?

**VII. Read the passage about British and American teenagers, and answer the questions.**

**Sport:** In the UK, football, rugby, tennis and basketball are the most popular sports for teenagers. In the USA, American football, athletics, basketball and baseball are popular.

**The Internet and television:** Teenagers in both the UK and the USA today watch television less than before but they use the Internet more. They spend over 25 hours a week online.

**Pocket money and shopping:** The average teenager in the UK gets about £7 a week pocket money. In the USA it is about \$10. They spend their money on clothes and going out, but magazines, presents and snacks are also important.

**Friends:** The average British and American teenager has seven close friends. He or she has sixteen online friends on social network websites.

1. Which sports do British and American teenagers play in their free time?

2. How long do they spend online?

3. How much pocket money do they get?

4. What do they spend it on?

5. How many online friends do they have?

**VIII. Fill the gaps with the words/ phrases in the box to give your opinion about the best leisure activity. More than one word can be suitable for some gaps.**

*In my opinion*

*In short*

*Finally*

*Second*

*In addition*

*First*

*Besides*

*also*

I choose reading as my favourite leisure activity for a number of reasons. (1) \_\_\_\_\_, I read anywhere I can and whenever I am free. (2) \_\_\_\_\_, I read many kinds of books, such as: short stories, novels, science books, etc. Books help me to have more knowledge and experience of society, science, and our world. Have you read a book "The Art of Happiness" by the Dalai Lama? It teaches us how not only to get over sadness, but also to be always cheerful. (3) \_\_\_\_\_, it (4) \_\_\_\_\_ reminds us to live because everybody and real happiness only comes when helping other people. (5) \_\_\_\_\_ that, I read a lot of detective stories, like "The Godfather", "Sherlock Holmes", etc. (6) \_\_\_\_\_, a number of comic books and magazines for teenagers make me feel relaxed in my free time. (7) \_\_\_\_\_, reading makes my mind rich, my life more pleasant, and I learn a lot from it. (8) \_\_\_\_\_, reading brings me

### TEST 3 UNIT 1

#### I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- |                          |                      |                     |                        |
|--------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. a. <u>s</u> ound      | b. <u>o</u> ut       | c. <u>f</u> ound    | d. en <u>o</u> ugh     |
| 2. a. br <u>a</u> celet  | b. <u>f</u> avourite | c. cr <u>a</u> ft   | d. g <u>a</u> me       |
| 3. a. le <u>s</u> ure    | b. <u>s</u> ure      | c. <u>s</u> hopping | d. socialise           |
| 4. a. tr <u>i</u> ck     | b. k <u>i</u> t      | c. add <u>i</u> ct  | d. v <u>i</u> rtual    |
| 5. a. satisf <u>i</u> ed | b. hook <u>e</u> d   | c. bor <u>e</u> d   | d. socialis <u>e</u> d |

#### II. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

- How much time do you spend \_\_\_\_\_ leisure activities?  
a. on                      b. in                      c. for                      d. with
- Why don't you apply for this job? It looks right \_\_\_\_\_ your street.  
a. on                      b. in                      c. at                      d. up
- Many young people don't \_\_\_\_\_ walking to school or playing active games?  
a. prefer                      b. enjoy                      c. suggest                      d. want
- Daisy is \_\_\_\_\_ social media. She spends lots of time on Facebook and Instagram.  
a. tired of                      b. bored with                      c. addicted to                      d. curious about
- \_\_\_\_\_ leisure time is free from compulsory activities, it is often referred to as "free time."  
a. Because                      b. Although                      c. When                      d. As long as
- On YouTube you can find many videos on \_\_\_\_\_ all aspects of your English.  
a. surfing                      b. working                      c. taking                      d. improving
- Some addicts are teenagers \_\_\_\_\_ are hooked on computer games.  
a. which                      b. who                      c. what                      d. whose
- My sister enjoys \_\_\_\_\_. She usually walks around the mall, but not buying anything.  
a. going shopping                      b. hanging out                      c. window shopping                      d. doing DIY
- You can raise a \_\_\_\_\_ pet like a Neopet if you aren't allowed to own a real pet.  
a. domestic                      b. virtual                      c. weird                      d. beloved
- "My favourite leisure activity is people watching." "\_\_\_\_\_"  
a. That sounds so weird!                      b. That's all right.  
c. OK. That's what you've chosen.                      d. Sure. It's very entertaining.

#### III. Complete the correct answer a, b, c or d.

- How much time do you spend \_\_\_\_\_ TV every day?  
a. watch                      b. to watch                      c. watching                      d. in watching
- I'd hate \_\_\_\_\_ the exams, so I'm doing my best.  
a. failing                      b. to fail                      c. fail                      d. failed
- I always enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ to my grandfather. He always tells me great stories.  
a. to talk                      b. to talking                      c. talking                      d. talk
- Could you help me \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen? It's a real mess!  
a. tidy                      b. tidied                      c. tidying                      d. with tidying
- Steven dislikes \_\_\_\_\_, so he usually takes a bus to work.  
a. to drive                      b. to be driven                      c. be driven                      d. driving
- Jane prefers \_\_\_\_\_ music than to listen to it.  
a. playing                      b. play                      c. to play                      d. played
- Marlene can't wait \_\_\_\_\_ to the beach again.  
a. to go                      b. going                      c. for going                      d. go
- I really regret \_\_\_\_\_ this computer – it's useless.

- a. buy                      b. to buy                      c. buying                      d. for buying
9. Your child needs \_\_\_\_\_ some weight. Tell him \_\_\_\_\_ less junk food and more exercise.  
a. to lose - eat              b. to lose - to eat              c. losing - to eat              d. losing - eat
10. I would love \_\_\_\_\_ to your party! Thank you for inviting me.  
a. come                      b. coming                      c. to come                      d. came

**IV. Complete the sentences with the correct form (to-infinitive or -ing form) of the verbs in the box. Some verbs can be followed by either a to-infinitive or an -ing form.**

stay    make    watch    do    cycle    eat    hang out    travel    get    read

- My brother loves \_\_\_\_\_ live football on TV.
- Do people in your country like \_\_\_\_\_ abroad on vacation?
- Riding a bike is Lan's pleasure, but she detests \_\_\_\_\_ in the rain.
- I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ at home to look after the children.
- As a child, he hated \_\_\_\_\_ books, but now he finds it enjoyable.
- Minh is in good shape. He enjoys \_\_\_\_\_ sport and exercise.
- She doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_ up early in the morning, especially at the weekend.
- Emily dislikes \_\_\_\_\_ crafts, but she enjoys origami.
- I fancy \_\_\_\_\_ out tonight because I'm too tired to cook.
- Nancy adores \_\_\_\_\_ with her best friend Helen.

**V. Complete the sentences with the to-infinitive or -ing form of the verbs in brackets.**

- I have enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) you. Hope \_\_\_\_\_ (see) you again soon.
- My father is not keen on coffee. He prefers \_\_\_\_\_ (drink) tea.
- I am a little busy. Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) a little longer?
- Mobile games are great, but I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ (play) them for too long.
- If I can choose, I prefer \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) at home to \_\_\_\_\_ (play) sport.
- Tonight I'd like \_\_\_\_\_ (go) out, but I have to do my homework.
- Sue loves \_\_\_\_\_ (make) origami. She can fold some animals, birds and flowers.
- I detested \_\_\_\_\_ (spend) two hours every day travelling to work and back.
- He started \_\_\_\_\_ (surf) the net hours ago. Has he stopped \_\_\_\_\_ (surf) yet?
- I tried hard \_\_\_\_\_ (concentrate), but my mind kept \_\_\_\_\_ (wander).

**VI. Write the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.**

- At present, the social networks \_\_\_\_\_ (become) more popular among young generation.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (not listen) to their new CD yet. Is it any good?
- When I was a student, I \_\_\_\_\_ (not like) doing homework.
- Facebook \_\_\_\_\_ (found) in 2004 by Mark Zuckerberg and Eduardo Saverin.
- The American \_\_\_\_\_ (spend) 34 hours a week watching television.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ ever/ make) origami cranes?
- I've just bought a new CD of folk songs. I \_\_\_\_\_ (listen) to it tonight.
- Do you adore \_\_\_\_\_ (lie) in a hot bath?
- Please try \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) punctually at 8.30.
- Many teenagers prefer \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV to \_\_\_\_\_ (read) books.

**VII. Supply the correct form of the words in brackets.**

- The Internet is very \_\_\_\_\_, it takes up a lot of our time. (addict)
- I enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ with friends and going out at the weekend. (social)
- Sitting in front of the computer too long can cause \_\_\_\_\_. (obese)
- Are you \_\_\_\_\_ about the new Gears Of War games? (excite)
- She listens to classical music for \_\_\_\_\_. (relax)
- The Internet has changed the English language \_\_\_\_\_. (consider)
- She was \_\_\_\_\_ with her job and decided to look for a new one. (satisfy)
- Face to face \_\_\_\_\_ is better than Skype video calls. (communicate)

**VIII. Read the passage carefully, then choose the correct answers.**

The latest addiction to trap thousands of people is the Internet, which has been blamed for broken relationships, job losses, financial ruin, and even suicide. Psychologists now recognize Internet Addiction Syndrome (IAS) as a new illness that could cause serious problems and ruin many lives.

IAS is similar to other problems like gambling, smoking and drinking: addicts have dreams about the Internet; they need to use it first thing in the morning; they lie to their parents and partners about how much time they spent online; they wish they could cut down, but are unable to do so. A recent study found that many users spend up to 40 hours a week on the Internet. Some of the addicts are teenagers who are already hooked on computer games and who find it very difficult to resist the games on the Internet.

- What is the best title of the passage?
  - The advantage of the Internet
  - Hooked on the Net
  - Impact of Internet on teens
  - A guide to the Internet
- According to the writer, internet addiction \_\_\_\_\_.
  - is not the same as gambling
  - is not an illness
  - can lead to financial problems
  - helps people kill time
- Internet addicts find it hard \_\_\_\_\_.
  - to use the Internet in the morning
  - to lie about the time they spent online
  - to spend more time on the Internet
  - to spend less time on the Internet
- The word 'it' in paragraph 2 refers to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - the Internet
  - IAS
  - dream
  - computer
- Which of the followings is NOT true?
  - IAS is recognised as a new illness.
  - Internet addiction can cause suicide behaviours.
  - Many internet addicts spend more than 40 hours a week online.
  - Teenagers who are hooked on computer games can suffer from IAS

#### IX. Write sentences with the cues given.

- Mai/ usually/ listen/ K-pop music/ free time.
- when/ I/ be/ a child/ I/ enjoy/ play/ computer games.
- my father/ spend/ most/ spare time/ look after/ the garden.
- watching TV/ most/ popular/ leisure activity/ Britain?
- many teenagers/ addicted/ the Internet/ computer games.
- she/ get/ hooked/ the medical drama/ after/ watch/ the first episode.
- most/ my friends/ prefer/ play sports/ to/ surf the net.
- today's world/ teenagers/ rely/ technology/ more/ the past

### UNIT 2: LIFE IN THE CITY

#### A. VOCABULARY

|                            |                          |                            |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 beehive (n)              | /bi:'harv/:              | tổ ong                     |
| 2 brave (adj)              | /breiv/:                 | can đảm                    |
| 3 buffalo-drawn cart (n)   | /'bʌfələʊ-drɔ:n kɑ:t/:   | xe trâu kéo                |
| 4 cattle (n)               | /'kætl/:                 | gia súc                    |
| 5 collect (v)              | /kə'lekt/:               | thu gom, lấy               |
| 6 convenient (adj)         | /kən'vi:niənt/:          | thuận tiện                 |
| 7 disturb (v)              | /di'stɜ:b/:              | làm phiền                  |
| 8 electrical appliance (n) | /'i:lektrɪkl ə'plaiəns/: | đồ điện                    |
| 9 generous (adj)           | /'dʒenərəs/:             | hào phóng                  |
| 10 ger (n)                 | /ger/:                   | lều của dân du mục Mông Cổ |
| 11 Gobi Highlands          | /'gəʊbi 'hailəndz/:      | Cao nguyên Gobi            |
| 12 grassland (n)           | /'grɑ:slænd/:            | đồng cỏ                    |
| 13 harvest time (n)        | /'hɑ:vɪst taɪm/:         | mùa gặt                    |
| 14 herd (v)                | /hɜ:d/:                  | chăn dắt                   |

|                        |                      |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| 15 local (adj, n)      | /'ləʊkl/:            | địa phương, dân địa phương |
| 16 Mongolia (n)        | /mɒŋ'gəʊliə/:        | Mông cổ                    |
| 17 nomad (n)           | /'nəʊmæd/:           | dân du mục                 |
| 18 nomadic (adj)       | /nəʊ'mædɪk/:         | thuộc về du mục            |
| 19 paddy field (n)     | /'pædi fi:ld/:       | đồng lúa                   |
| 20 pasture (n)         | /'pɑ:stfə(r)/:       | đồng cỏ                    |
| 21 pick (v)            | /pɪk/:               | hái (hoa, quả...)          |
| 22 racing motorist (n) | /'reɪsɪŋ məʊtərɪst/: | người lái ô tô đua         |
| 23 vast (adj)          | /vɑ:st/:             | rộng lớn, bát ngát         |

## B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### B. GRAMMAR:

#### I. Ôn tập so sánh hơn với tính từ (comparative forms of adjectives)

Ta sử dụng so sánh hơn của tính từ để so sánh giữa người(hoặc vật) này với người(hoặc vật) khác. Trong câu so sánh hơn, tính từ sẽ được chia làm 2 loại là tính từ dài và tính từ ngắn, trong đó:

- Tính từ ngắn là tính từ có 1 âm tiết : Ví dụ : tall, high, big.....
- Tính từ dài là tính từ có từ 2 âm tiết trở lên : Ví dụ : expensive, intelligent.....

#### II. Cấu trúc câu so sánh hơn:

| Đối với tính từ ngắn                                                                                                                  | Đối với tính từ dài                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| S1 + to be + adj +er + than + S2                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Với tính từ ngắn, thêm đuôi “er” vào sau tính từ                                                                                      | Với tính từ dài, thêm đuôi “more” vào trước tính từ                                                                                                                        |
| Ví dụ:<br>China is bigger than India<br>Lan is shorter than Nam<br>My house is bigger than your house<br>His pen is newer than my pen | Ví dụ:<br>Gold is more valuable than silver<br>Hanh is more beautiful than Hoa<br>Your book is more expensive than my book<br>Exercise 1 is more difficult than exercise 2 |

Lưu ý: Để nhấn mạnh ý trong câu so sánh hơn, ta thêm “much” hoặc “far” trước hình thức so sánh

Ví dụ: Her boyfriend is much/ far older than her

#### III. Cách sử dụng tính từ trong câu so sánh hơn:

##### 1. Cách thêm đuôi -er vào tính từ ngắn

|                                                                                           |                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Tính từ kết thúc bởi 1 phụ âm → thêm đuôi -er                                             | Old-older, near-nearer             |
| Tính từ kết thúc bởi 1 nguyên âm “e” → thêm đuôi -r                                       | Nice-nicer                         |
| Tính từ kết thúc bởi 1 nguyên âm(ueoai) + 1 phụ âm → gấp đôi phụ âm cuối và thêm đuôi -er | Big-bigger, hot-hotter, fat-fatter |
| Tính từ kết thúc bởi “y” dù có 2 âm tiết vẫn là tính từ ngắn → bỏ “y” và thêm đuôi “ier”  | Happy-happier, Pretty-prettier     |

Lưu ý: Một số tính từ có hai âm tiết kết thúc bằng “et, ow, er, y” thì áp dụng như quy tắc thêm er ở tính từ ngắn

Ví dụ: quiet → quieter

clever → cleverer

Simple → simpler

narrow → narrower

##### 2. Một vài tính từ đặc biệt:

Với một số tính từ sau, dạng so sánh hơn của chúng không theo quy tắc trên.

| Tính từ    | Dạng so sánh hơn |
|------------|------------------|
| Good       | Better           |
| Bad        | Worse            |
| Far        | Farther/ further |
| Much/ many | More             |
| Little     | Less             |
| Old        | Older/ elder     |

## BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN:

Bài 1: Cho dạng so sánh hơn của các tính từ trong bảng sau:

| Tính từ | So sánh hơn | Tính từ | So sánh hơn |
|---------|-------------|---------|-------------|
| Bad     |             | Modern  |             |



|            |  |           |  |
|------------|--|-----------|--|
| Clever     |  | Old       |  |
| Convenient |  | Peaceful  |  |
| Far        |  | pretty    |  |
| Fresh      |  | Quiet     |  |
| Friendly   |  | Smart     |  |
| Generous   |  | Soon      |  |
| Good       |  | Strong    |  |
| Happy      |  | Ugly      |  |
| High       |  | Warm      |  |
| Little     |  | Wonderful |  |
| Long       |  | Young     |  |

### **Bài 2: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng:**

1. Living in this small town is (more peaceful/ peaceful more) than I expected.
2. Nowadays people are (more anxious/ anxious more) about pollution than before.
3. Today you look (happier/ more happy) than usual.
4. This year I will move to a (bigger/ biggest) city.
5. This experience is (more exciting/ most exciting) than I expected.
6. Who is (more intelligent/ most intelligent) between two of them.
7. This song is (catcher/ more catchy) than that song.
8. The new sofa is (costlier/ more costly) than the old one.
9. Our family will move to a (more comfortable/ more comfortable than) place next year.
10. I hope you will get (best/ better) the next time I see you.
11. James has (many/ more) books than Paul.
12. She is (more independent/ most independent) than the last time I saw her.
13. Today my sister (is more quiet/ quieter) than usual.
14. Jane is (more pretty/ prettier) than Ann.
15. The weather is (hotter/ hottest) than yesterday.

### **Bài 3 : Hoàn thành các câu sau với dạng so sánh hơn của tính từ trong ngoặc:**

1. Living in the city is \_\_\_\_\_ than living in the country (convenient).
2. Mrs. Smith is \_\_\_\_\_ than I thought. (young).
3. Houses in big cities are much \_\_\_\_\_ than those in my hometown (tall).
4. No one in my class is \_\_\_\_\_ than Jim (smart).
5. The senior prom would be \_\_\_\_\_ than any other proms (exciting).
6. I have \_\_\_\_\_ courage than my brother (little).
7. His health condition is getting \_\_\_\_\_ (bad).
8. You are \_\_\_\_\_ than you think (clever).
9. This computer is much \_\_\_\_\_ than mine (expensive).
10. I always dream of a \_\_\_\_\_ house to live in (modern).
11. They are \_\_\_\_\_ than they used to be (skillful).
12. Life in this village is \_\_\_\_\_ than anywhere else (peaceful).
13. I think people in the countryside are \_\_\_\_\_ than city dwellers (friendly).
14. This year, the prize for the winner is \_\_\_\_\_ than last year (valuable).
15. Which dress is \_\_\_\_\_ for me? (suitable).
16. You should be \_\_\_\_\_ and show your best (confident).
17. They said that the conference was \_\_\_\_\_ than usual (interesting).
18. Jane is so pretty but her sister is even \_\_\_\_\_ (pretty).
19. They work hard to have \_\_\_\_\_ life (good).
20. John is \_\_\_\_\_ than the rest of the class (intelligent).

### **Bài 4: Biết câu so sánh hơn dùng từ gợi ý:**

0. Bob / strong / Jim. → Bob is stronger than Jim.
1. My current job / demanding / my last one.

- 2.Today/ Jane/ beautiful/ usual.
- 3.Yesterday / it/ cold/ today.
- 4.Fruits and vegetables / healthy / fast food.
5. Life in the countryside / peaceful/ life in the city.
- 6.Your sister/ good/ you think.
- 7.Who / intelligent/ you/ in your class?
8. Ann/ short / you?
9. Last year/ his salary / low/ this year.
10. Bob/ look / strong/ his brother.

#### **Bài 5: Sắp xếp các từ sau thành câu hoàn chỉnh:**

1.London /think/ is/ than/ more/ I/ New York/ expensive.

2.Importance/ is/ Health/ than/ money/ more.

3.in / in/ city/ better/ the / is/ in /than / country/ convenient / than / is.

4.in / health care/ city/ better/ the / is/ in / than / countryside/ the service/ the.

5.living/ is/ than / in /rural/ more/ areas / living/ urban /in / comfortable/

6.in/ pasture / this/ that/ area / richer / is / area.

7. Peter/ better / Math/ than / at/ is / Tom.

8.crowded/ cities/ often / than / more/ are/ the / countryside.

9.this /cake/ is /that/ more/ one/ delicious/ than?

10.Who/ more/ than / Tom / can /in / intelligent / class/ his?

#### **IV. SO SÁNH HƠN VỚI TRẠNG TỪ (COMPARATIVE FORMS OF ADVERBS)**

Tương tự như với tính từ, trạng từ chia thành 2 loại:

-Trạng từ ngắn là những trạng từ có 1 âm tiết.

Ví dụ: hard, near, far, right, wrong.....

-Trạng từ dài là những từ có từ 2 âm tiết trở lên.

Ví dụ: slowly, responsibly, quickly, interestingly, tiredly.....

1.Cấu trúc câu so sánh hơn với trạng từ:

| Đối với trạng từ ngắn                                                                                                                                  | Đối với trạng từ dài                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| S1 +V +adv +er +than+ S2                                                                                                                               | S1 +V +more / less +adv +than+ S2                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Với các trạng từ ngắn, thường là trạng từ chỉ cách thức có hình thức giống tính từ, ta thêm “er” vào sau trạng từ                                      | -Với trạng từ dài, hầu hết là các trạng từ chỉ cách thức có đuôi “ly” ta thêm “more”(nhiều hơn) hoặc “less”(ít hơn) vào các trước trạng từ<br>-“Less” là từ phản nghĩa của “more” ,được dùng để diễn đạt sự không bằng nhau ở mức độ ít hơn. |
| Ví dụ:<br>They work harder than I do.<br>She runs faster than he does<br>My mother gets up earlier than me.<br>I go to school later than my friends do | Ví dụ:<br>My friend did the test more carefully than I did.<br>My father talks more slowly than my mother does.<br>Hanh acts less responsibly than anyone                                                                                    |

2.Một vài trạng từ có dạng từ đặc biệt:

| Tính từ | Dạng so sánh hơn |
|---------|------------------|
| Well    | Better           |

|       |                  |
|-------|------------------|
| Badly | Worse            |
| Far   | Farther/ further |
| Early | Earlier          |

Ví dụ:

The little boy ran farther than his friends

You're driving worse today than yesterday.

### **BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN:**

#### **Bài 6: Cho dạng so sánh hơn của các trạng từ trong bảng sau:**

| Trạng từ     | So sánh hơn | Trạng từ    | So sánh hơn |
|--------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| Badly        |             | Late        |             |
| Conveniently |             | Smartly     |             |
| Early        |             | responsibly |             |
| Far          |             | Patiently   |             |
| Fast         |             | Generously  |             |
| Fluently     |             | Cleverly    |             |
| Happily      |             | Quickly     |             |
| Hard         |             | Suitable    |             |
| Slowly       |             | Beautifully |             |
| well         |             | Strongly    |             |

#### **Bài 7: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng:**

- The teacher asked me to speak \_\_\_\_\_.  
A.loud                      B.louder                      C.more loud
- Today you looks \_\_\_\_\_ than usual.  
A.more confident                      B.more confidently                      C. confidently
- Your house is \_\_\_\_\_ decorated than me.  
A.more beautiful                      B.more beautifully                      C.beautifully.
- No one in my class runs \_\_\_\_\_ than Peter.  
A.more fastly                      B.more better                      C.faster.
- This time you did much \_\_\_\_\_!  
A.better                      B.more better                      C.more well
- You have to work \_\_\_\_\_ If you want to succeed.  
A.more hardly                      B.hardlier                      C.harder
- Today I come to class \_\_\_\_\_ than usual  
A.more early                      B.earlier                      C. early
- You need to work \_\_\_\_\_, or you will make a lot of mistakes.  
A.more careful                      B. more carefully                      C. carefully
- She walks \_\_\_\_\_ than other people.  
A.slower                      B.slowlier                      C.more slower
- The blue skirt suits you \_\_\_\_\_ than the black one.  
A.better                      B.more better                      C.more well

#### **Bài 8: Hoàn thành các câu sau với dạng so sánh hơn của các trạng từ trong ngoặc:**

- I speak English \_\_\_\_\_ now than last year.(fluently).
- They smiled \_\_\_\_\_ than before(happily).
- Tom arrived \_\_\_\_\_ than I expected(early).
- We will meet \_\_\_\_\_ in the afternoon(late).
- Mary dances \_\_\_\_\_ than anyone else(gracefully)
- Could you speak \_\_\_\_\_?(loud)
- Jim could do the tast \_\_\_\_\_ Jane(well).
- We walked \_\_\_\_\_ than other people(slowly).

9. Planes can fly \_\_\_\_\_ than birds (high).
10. I can throw the ball \_\_\_\_\_ than anyone else in my team (far).
11. James drives \_\_\_\_\_ than his wife (carefully).
12. I visit my grandmother \_\_\_\_\_ than my brother. (often)
13. No one can run \_\_\_\_\_ than John (fast).
14. My sister cooks \_\_\_\_\_ than I (badly).
15. Everyone in the company is working \_\_\_\_\_ than ever before (hard).

**Bài 9: Hoàn thành các Câu sau với dạng so sánh hơn của các trạng từ trong ngoặc:**

1. I/ play/ tennis/ badly/ Tom.
2. The Australian athlete/ run/ slowly/ the Korean athlete.
3. Cats/ walk/ quiet/ dogs.
4. James/ reply/ swiftly/ Peter.
5. The tiger/ hunt/ ferociously/ the wolf.
6. Your idea/ work/ well/ mine.
7. I/ eat/ vegetables/ often/ I used / to.
8. Today/ you/ perform/ badly/ yesterday.

**Bài 10: Viết lại câu sau cho nghĩa không đổi, sử dụng cấu trúc so sánh hơn "more /less"**

0. Ann speaks French more fluently than James.  
→ James speaks French less fluently than Ann.
1. Today the sun shines more brightly than yesterday.
2. This cake is more freshly made than that one.
3. Jim behaves more politely than his younger brother.
4. Teenagers act more violently these days than in the past.
5. The doctor treats his patients more patiently than he should.
6. My sister speaks more quickly than I.
7. Now Mary drives more carefully than she used to.
8. This summer I go to the beach more often than the last summer.

**BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO**

**Bài 11: Hoàn thành câu, sử dụng dạng so sánh hơn của các tính từ hoặc trạng từ cho sẵn**

|             |       |      |          |             |
|-------------|-------|------|----------|-------------|
| Angrily     | large | Soft | Cleverly | Warm        |
| comfortably | hard  | Rich | costly   | beautifully |

1. Her voice is \_\_\_\_\_ than mine.
2. James can sing \_\_\_\_\_ than many singers.
3. We can live \_\_\_\_\_ in the countryside than in the city.
4. We hoped we would own a \_\_\_\_\_ apartment.
5. This modern computer is \_\_\_\_\_ than that old-fashioned one.
6. My new house is \_\_\_\_\_ designed than my old one.
7. My father reacted \_\_\_\_\_ to my misbehaviors than my mother.
8. John studies \_\_\_\_\_ than anyone else in the class.
9. It is getting \_\_\_\_\_ today so we can go out.
10. People in the city are \_\_\_\_\_ than people in the countryside.

**Bài 12: Gạch chân lỗi sai trong mỗi câu sau và sửa lại cho đúng:**

1. Their life has been more comfortably since they moved to the city.
2. She looks more pretty in this white dress.
3. The manager wants us to work more hardly.
4. This week you looks more healthily than last week.
5. Everyone in my town is looking for more better crop this year.
6. Jim runs more fastly than his friends.
7. I think a settle life is more better than a nomadic life.
8. Today Jim performs less confident than usual.
9. The heavy rain makes it more difficultly to drive.
10. Their team preformed much more well than our team.

**Bài 13: Viết lại câu bằng từ đã cho sao cho nghĩa câu không thay đổi theo mẫu:**

0. This exercise is easier than that one.

→ That exercise is more difficult than that one.

1. Mr Smith is wealthier than Mr. Brown.

→ Mr Brown \_\_\_\_\_

2. My house is smaller than my parent's house.

→ My parent's house \_\_\_\_\_

3. The black dress is more expensive than the red one.

→ The red dress \_\_\_\_\_

4. Today it is colder than yesterday.

→ Yesterday \_\_\_\_\_

5. I don't think you are taller than me.

→ I don't think I \_\_\_\_\_

6. Is Jim worse at Math than John?

→ Is John \_\_\_\_\_

7. Jim looks much younger than his classmates.

→ Jim's classmates \_\_\_\_\_

8. Your hair is longer than mine.

My hair \_\_\_\_\_

**Bài 14: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng:**

Benefit of living in the countryside.

While many people prefer city life, a lot of people want to send their life in a rural area. The countryside are often(1) \_\_\_\_\_ than the city because there are not as many factories and traffic as in big cities. The country folk can be (2) \_\_\_\_\_ and they often live(3) \_\_\_\_\_ than city dwellers. Besides, life in the countryside is(4) \_\_\_\_\_ and peaceful because the crime rate is much(5) \_\_\_\_\_. The rural areas are(6) \_\_\_\_\_ populated than the urban area but the neighbors are(7) \_\_\_\_\_ and more helpful. Life in the countryside is(8) \_\_\_\_\_ for old people than the energetic youngsters.

- |                     |                  |                    |                    |
|---------------------|------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. less polluted | B. more polluted | C. less pollutedly | D. more pollutedly |
| 2. A. more healthy  | B. healthier     | C. more healthily  | D. helthily.       |
| 3. A. longly        | B. longer        | C. shortly         | D. shorter         |
| 4. A. more simple   | B. simpler       | C. simply          | D. more simply     |
| 5. A. higher        | B. highly        | C. lower           | D. lowly           |
| 6. A. more densely  | B. more dense    | C. less            | D. less dense      |
| 7. A. more friendly | B. friendlier    | C. friendly        | D. less friendly   |
| 8. A. more suitable | B. more suitbly  | C. less suitably   | D. suitably.       |

**Bài 15: Đọc đoạn văn sau và trả lời câu hỏi: The nomadic life of Mongolian**

Mongololian people nowadays still maintain their tradition of a nomadic life. About half of mongolian population do not settle down but travel from place to place every season. When you think of Mongolian nomads, you think of animal farmers. Their most valuable possessions are their tents and cattle. Mongolian has severe weather. There are dramatic changed in weather condotions between seasons. That is the reason why Mongolian have to move location throughout the year to the most appropriate spots. In winter, they often move in front of a mountain for shelter. In spring, it's closer to a river, in summer right next to a river for water supply, and in autumn up a hill to collect hay for winter time. Most nomads move at least four times a year but some might move up to 30 times in a year ,especially if they have a lot of animals that eat through the vaivable food quickly.

The number of namads has, however, significantly decreased over last years. More and more of its citizens move to Ulaanbaatar because they want to look for an education and a professional job. Mongolia is in a period of rapid change.

1. Is it true that about 50% of Mongolian population still lead a nomadic life?

2. What are the most valuable possessions of Mongolian nomads?

3. Why do Mongolian have to move location throughout the year?

4. Where do Mongolian nomads often move to in fall?

5. How often most nomads move their locations?

6. Why more and more Mongolian move to Ulaanbaatar?

### TEST 1 UNIT 2

#### I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the others.

- |                            |                      |                       |                     |
|----------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. neigh <u>bor</u>     | B. coug <u>h</u>     | C. althoug <u>h</u>   | D. droug <u>h</u> t |
| 2. A. entertai <u>n</u>    | B. rai <u>n</u>      | C. ai <u>r</u>        | D. strai <u>n</u>   |
| 3. A. tr <u>y</u>          | B. faci <u>l</u> ity | C. typhoo <u>n</u>    | D. supp <u>l</u> y  |
| 4. A. su <u>per</u> market | B. ru <u>l</u> er    | C. poll <u>u</u> tion | D. <u>u</u> rban    |
| 5. A. na <u>t</u> ure      | B. migran <u>t</u>   | C. faci <u>l</u> ity  | D. awa <u>y</u>     |
| 6. A. tra <u>ff</u> ic     | B. relat <u>i</u> ve | C. trag <u>e</u> dy   | D. j <u>a</u> m     |
| 7. A. apartm <u>e</u> nt   | B. off <u>e</u> r    | C. pref <u>e</u> r    | D. anothe <u>r</u>  |
| 8. A. natu <u>r</u> e      | B. pressu <u>r</u> e | C. <u>u</u> rban      | D. supp <u>l</u> y  |
| 9. A. crea <u>t</u> e      | B. pea <u>c</u> eful | C. increa <u>s</u> e  | D. easi <u>l</u> y  |
| 10. A. accessi <u>b</u> le | B. pressu <u>r</u> e | C. illn <u>e</u> ss   | D. succ <u>ess</u>  |

#### II. Choose the words that have the different stress from the others.

- |                   |                 |              |                |
|-------------------|-----------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. A. nomadic     | B. generous     | C. colourful | D. countryside |
| 2. A. popular     | B. calculus     | C. beehive   | D. disturb     |
| 3. A. harvest     | B. collect      | C. peaceful  | D. whisper     |
| 4. A. charade     | B. transport    | C. expect    | D. paddy       |
| 5. A. opportunity | B. inconvenient | C. facility  | D. optimistic  |

#### III. Write the comparison of these adjectives and adverbs.

Tính từ/ Trạng từ

So sánh hơn

- |                 |       |
|-----------------|-------|
| 1. beautifully  | ..... |
| 2. hot          | ..... |
| 3. crazy        | ..... |
| 4. slowly       | ..... |
| 5. much         | ..... |
| 6. little       | ..... |
| 7. badly        | ..... |
| 8. well         | ..... |
| 9. attractively | ..... |
| 10. big         | ..... |

#### IV. Write the comparative and superlative of these adjectives.



| Adjective   | Comparative             | Superlative                 |
|-------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| interesting | <i>more interesting</i> | <i>the most interesting</i> |
| expensive   | _____                   | _____                       |
| thick       | _____                   | _____                       |
| friendly    | _____                   | _____                       |
| fine        | _____                   | _____                       |
| thin        | _____                   | _____                       |
| difficult   | _____                   | _____                       |
| warm        | _____                   | _____                       |
| wise        | _____                   | _____                       |
| easy        | _____                   | _____                       |
| wonderful   | _____                   | _____                       |
| sunny       | _____                   | _____                       |
| fat         | _____                   | _____                       |
| long        | _____                   | _____                       |

**V. Use the adjective in brackets in their correct forms of comparison to complete the sentences.**

- Tea is \_\_\_\_\_ coffee. (**cheap**)
- The new harvest machine is \_\_\_\_\_ than the old one. (**effective**)
- The countryside is \_\_\_\_\_ the town. (**beautiful**)
- A tractor is \_\_\_\_\_ a buffalo. (**powerful**)
- My sister is \_\_\_\_\_ me. (**tall**)
- Blue whales are \_\_\_\_\_ elephants. (**heavy**)
- The Mekong River is \_\_\_\_\_ the Red River. (**long**)
- Do you think English is \_\_\_\_\_ French in grammar? (**easy**)
- My new bed is \_\_\_\_\_ my old bed. (**comfortable**)
- The film about my village town is \_\_\_\_\_ than the book. (**interesting**)

**VI. Choose the best answers of these sentences.**

- Of the four dresses, I like the red one (**better/ best**).
- Bill is the (**happier/ happiest**) person we know.
- Pat's cat is (**faster/ fastest**) than Peter's.
- This poster is (**colourfuler/ more colourful**) than the one in the hall.
- Does Fred feel (**weller/ better**) today than he did yesterday?
- This vegetable soup tastes very (**good/ best**).
- Jane is the (**less/ least**) athletic of all the women.
- My cat is the (**prettier/ prettiest**) of the two.
- This summary is (**the better/ the best**) of the pair.
- The colder the weather gets, (**sicker/ the sicker**) I feel.

**VII. Complete the sentences with the correct verb form.**

- John adores \_\_\_\_\_ (**play**) badminton in the winter
- My father sometimes goes \_\_\_\_\_ (**hunt**) in the forests. He'd like to find some more food for our family.
- The boy \_\_\_\_\_ (**pick**) up a stone and threw it in to the river.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ (**collect**) stamps from many countries since he \_\_\_\_\_ (**be**) eight.
- Which sports do you like \_\_\_\_\_ (**play**)?
- Hoa's teacher wants her (**spend**) \_\_\_\_\_ more time on math.
- I promise I (**try**) \_\_\_\_\_ my best next semester.
- Sandra needs (**improve**) \_\_\_\_\_ her English writing.
- You should (**underline**) \_\_\_\_\_ the word you want (**learn**) \_\_\_\_\_.

10. Can you help me **(move)** \_\_\_\_\_ this table?  
11. Nam always **(get)** \_\_\_\_\_ grade A in Physics, but last semester he (get) \_\_\_\_\_ B.  
12. They were proud of (be) \_\_\_\_\_ so successful.

11. Nam always (get) \_\_\_\_\_ grade A in Physics, but last semester he (get) \_\_\_\_\_

12. They were proud of (be) \_\_\_\_\_ so successful.

**VIII. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the word in brackets.**

1. There is a \_\_\_\_\_ of books on the shelf. **(collect)**
2. It is very \_\_\_\_\_ for people in remote areas to get to hospitals. **(convenience)**
3. He is very \_\_\_\_\_ with his hands. **(skill)**
4. It is said that water collected from the local streams is \_\_\_\_\_ to drink. **(safe)**
5. We want \_\_\_\_\_ relations with all countries. **(friend)**
6. I like to eat \_\_\_\_\_, so I eat a lot of fruits and vegetables every day. **(health)**

**IX. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the word in brackets.**

1. Iceland is considered the most \_\_\_\_\_ country in the world. **(peace)**
2. A \_\_\_\_\_ lifestyle has its advantages and disadvantages. **(nomad)**
3. My brother has been a stamp \_\_\_\_\_ for several years. **(collect)**
4. It is a/ an \_\_\_\_\_ place to hold a picnic because it is too far from the road. **(convenience)**
5. Drinking water in some areas may be \_\_\_\_\_. **(safe)**
6. During my stay in the village, I was \_\_\_\_\_ with several local farmers. **(friend)**
7. Encouraging children to eat and drink \_\_\_\_\_ is very important. **(health)**
8. Local people in the village often wear their \_\_\_\_\_ costumer during the festivals. **(tradition)**
9. Please give \_\_\_\_\_ to that charity to help the homeless after the flood. **(generous)**
10. The baby slept very \_\_\_\_\_ because the bed was really comfortable. **(sound)**

**X. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentence.**

1. Teenagers enjoy ..... to music and ..... out with friends.  
A. listen – hang                                      B. to listen – to hang  
C. listening – hang                                  D. listening – hanging
2. Don't worry. It is ..... to travel to that village even at night.  
A. safe                                      B. unsafe                                      C. difficult                                      D. inconvenient
3. Life in a small town is ..... than that in a big city.  
A. peaceful                                      B. much peaceful  
C. less peaceful                                  D. much more peaceful
4. The boys often help their parents to ..... water from the village well.  
A. gather                                      B. collect                                      C. absorb                                      D. give
5. .... month is the Hoa Ban festival of the Thai people held in?  
A. When                                      B. Which                                      C. How many                                      D. How often
6. Vietnamese people have many ..... customs and crafts.  
A. tradition                                      B. traditional                                      C. culture                                      D. cultural
7. It is ..... in the city than it is in the country.  
A. noisily                                      B. more noisier                                      C. noisier                                      D. noisy
8. The English test was ..... than I thought it would be.  
A. the easier                                      B. more easy                                      C. easiest                                      D. easier
9. English is thought to be ..... than Math.  
A. harder                                      B. the more hard                                      C. hardest                                      D. the hardest
10. My house is ..... hers.  
A. cheap than                                      B. cheaper                                      C. more cheap than                                      D. cheaper than
11. Her office is ..... away than mine.  
A. father                                      B. more far                                      C. farther                                      D. farer
12. Tom is ..... than David.  
A. handsome                                      B. the more handsome  
C. more handsome                                  D. the most handsome
13. He did the test ..... I did.  
A. as bad as                                      B. badder than                                      C. more badly than                                      D. worse than
14. A boat is ..... than a plane.  
A. slower                                      B. slowest                                      C. more slow                                      D. more slower

15. My new sofa is ..... than the old one.  
A. more comfortable                      B. comfortably  
C. more comfortabler                      D. comfortable
16. My sister dances ..... than me.  
A. gooder                      B. weller                      C. better                      D. more good
17. This road is ..... than that road.  
A. narrower                      B. narrow                      C. the most narrow                      D. more narrower
18. He drives ..... his brother.  
A. more careful than                      B. more carefully  
C. more carefully than                      D. as careful as
19. It was ..... day of the year.  
A. the colder                      B. the coldest                      C. coldest                      D. colder
20. She is ..... student in my class.  
A. most hard-working                      B. more hard-working  
C. the most hard-working                      D. as hard-working

**XI. Read the following passage and choose the best answer A, B, C or D.**

Sydney is Australia's most exciting city. The history of Australia begins here. In 1788 Captain Arthur Philips arrived in Sydney with 11 ships and 1624 passengers from Britain (including 770 prisoners). Today there are about 3.6 million people in Sydney. It is the biggest city in Australia, the busiest port in the South Pacific and one of the most beautiful cities in the world. In Sydney, the buildings are higher, the colors are brighter and the nightlife is more exciting. There are over 20 excellent beaches close to Sydney and its warm climate and cool winter have made it a favorite city for immigrants from overseas. There are two things that make Sydney famous: its beautiful harbor, the Sydney Harbor Bridge, which was built in 1932 and the Sydney Opera House, which was opened in 1973.

1. Where did Captain Arthur Philips arrive in 1788?  
A. South Pacific                      B. Sydney Harbor  
C. Britain                      D. Sydney
2. Which of the following should be the title of the reading passage?  
A. Sydney's Opera House                      B. The history of Sydney  
C. Sydneys beaches and harbors                      D. An introduction of Sydney
3. Which of the following statements is NOT true about Sydney?  
A. Sydney is not a favorite city for immigrants from overseas.  
B. Sydney is one of the most beautiful cities in the world.  
C. Sydney is the most exciting city in Australia.  
D. Sydney is the biggest port in the South Pacific.
4. How many beaches are there close to Sydney?  
A. 11 beaches                      B. over 20 beaches  
C. nearly 20 beaches                      D. 770 beaches
5. When was the Sydney Harbor Bridge built?  
A. 1788                      B. 1973                      C. 1932                      D. 1625

**XII. Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage.**

Living in the country is something that people from the city often dream about. However, in reality, it has both advantages and disadvantages.

There are certainly many advantages of living in the country. First, you can enjoy peace and quietness. Moreover, people tend to be friendlier. A further advantage is that there is less traffic, so it is safer for young children.

However, there are certain disadvantages or drawbacks to life outside the city. First, because there are fewer people, you are likely to have few friends. In addition, entertainment is difficult to find, particularly in the evening. Furthermore, the fact that there are fewer shops and services so it is quite hard to find jobs. As a result, you may have to travel a long way to work, which can be extremely expensive.

In conclusion, it can be seen that the country is more suitable for some people than others. On the whole, it is often the best place for those who are retired or who have young children. In contrast, young or single people who have a career are better provided for in the city.

- According to the passage, living in the country has \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. both good and bad points                      B. only bad points  
C. only good points                                  D. no disadvantages
- How many advantages does living in the country have?  
A. Two                      B. Four                      C. Three                      D. No
- Living in the country is safer for young children because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. there are few shops                                  B. there is less traffic  
C. there are fewer people                              D. there are few services
- Which of the following statements is NOT true according to the passage?  
A. The country is only suitable for retired people.  
B. It's hard to find entertainment in the country.  
C. There are fewer shops and services in the country.  
D. People in the country tend to be friendlier than people in the city.
- Having few friends is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. one of drawbacks to life in the country  
B. the only disadvantage of living in the country  
C. one of certain advantages to life outside the city  
D. one of certain drawbacks to life outside the city

**XIII. Read the text and choose the suitable words with the correct blank spaces.**

|                 |                |                 |            |               |           |             |             |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|------------|---------------|-----------|-------------|-------------|
| <i>visitors</i> | <i>stories</i> | <i>mountain</i> | <i>any</i> | <i>riding</i> | <i>to</i> | <i>with</i> | <i>life</i> |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|------------|---------------|-----------|-------------|-------------|

I live in a (1) ..... village. My parents often tell me (2) ..... about their life in the past. It's not much like the village I can see nowadays.

Some villagers now live in brick houses instead of earthen ones. Our houses are better equipped (3) ..... electric fans and TVs. Thanks to the TV, we now know more about (4) ..... outside our village. We don't use oil lamps (5) ..... more. We have electric lights which are much brighter. More villagers are using motorcycles for transport instead of (6) ..... a horse or walking. We – village children – no longer have to walk a long way and cross a stream to get (7) ..... school, which is dangerous in the rainy season. Now there's a new school nearby. We also have more (8) ..... from the city. They come to experience our way of life.

**XIV. Read the text and decide whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F).**

Tokyo is a famous city. There are a few good buildings and impressive temples; there are a few parks worth visiting. Everything has to be small in Tokyo: houses, ..... rooms, shops. Long-side streets consist of tiny houses only, and this often creates a toy-like, with small women tip-toeing along in their kimonos.

Tokyo at night is a very different place from Tokyo in daytime. Millions of neon lights are switched on and nowhere in the world is more attractive.

A town is not its buildings alone; it is an atmosphere, its pleasure, its sadness, its madness, and above all its people. Tokyo may lack architectural beauty but it has character and excitement; it is alive. I found it a mysterious and lovable city.

- \_\_\_\_\_ There are many beautiful buildings in Tokyo.
- \_\_\_\_\_ There is nothing to see in the parks in Tokyo.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Many small houses found along long road.
- \_\_\_\_\_ At night, Tokyo is not as attractive as many other cities.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Tokyo has beautiful architecture.
- \_\_\_\_\_ The author likes Tokyo.

**XV. Rewrite each sentence so it has the same meaning. Use a comparative form of the adjective in brackets.**

- Tim is older than Sarah.                      **(young)**  
Sarah .....
- Our house is large than yours.                      **(small)**  
Your house is .....
- Bill is not as tall as David.                      **(short)**  
Bill is .....
- Jack's marks are worse than mine.                      **(good)**  
My marks .....

5. This book is the same price at that one. **(expensive)**  
That book is .....
6. Your bike is slower than mine. **(fast)**  
My bike .....

**XVI. Rewrite the sentences of comparison.**

1. Her old house is bigger than her new one.  
→ Her new house .....
2. No one in my class is taller than Peter.  
→ Peter .....
3. The black dress is more expensive than the white one.  
→ The white dress .....
4. According to me, English is easier than Maths.  
→ According to me, Maths .....
5. No one in my group is more intelligent than Mary.  
→ Mary .....
6. No river in the world is longer than the Nile.  
→ The Nile .....
7. Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world.  
→ No mountain .....
8. This is the first time I have ever met such a pretty girl,  
→ She is .....
9. He works much. He feels tired.  
→ The more .....
10. This computer works better than that one.  
→ That computer .....

**TEST 2 (UNIT 2)**

**I.Fill in the blanks with the correct words or phrases matching with the verbs. Maybe some verbs can be used more than one.**

|                    |                    |                   |                   |                 |
|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| <i>grapes</i>      | <i>food</i>        | <i>buffaloes</i>  | <i>a camel</i>    | <i>data</i>     |
| <i>dolls</i>       | <i>a tent</i>      | <i>water</i>      | <i>cattle</i>     | <i>a flag</i>   |
| <i>strawberry</i>  | <i>a bike</i>      | <i>fence</i>      | <i>tea buds</i>   | <i>a car</i>    |
| <i>goats</i>       | <i>information</i> | <i>an ostrich</i> | <i>blackberry</i> | <i>sheep</i>    |
| <i>a motorbike</i> | <i>a notice</i>    | <i>postcards</i>  | <i>a memorial</i> | <i>a donkey</i> |

- 1.ride: .....
2. collect: .....
- 3.pick: .....
- 4.herd: .....
- 5.pick up: .....

*Note: - ostrich (n) = đà điểu*

**II. Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.**

**Answer**                      **A**                                              **B**

- |                           |                                                                                        |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| _____ 1. cattle           | A. food made from milk, such as butter, cheese, etc.                                   |
| _____ 2. a nomad          | B. tasks such as cleaning, washing, ironing ... that have to be done regularly at home |
| _____ 3. pasture          | C. a field planted with rice growing in water                                          |
| _____ 4. home-made        | D. an area with mountains or hills                                                     |
| _____ 5. a paddy field    | E. a person moving from a place to another for earning a living all the time           |
| _____ 6. household chores | F. male and female cows on a farm                                                      |
| _____ 7. countryside      |                                                                                        |

G. the way that you like

**III. Fill in each blank in the following passage with ONE suitable word from the box.**

|                |                  |                |                   |              |
|----------------|------------------|----------------|-------------------|--------------|
| <i>ride</i>    | <i>grassland</i> | <i>cattle</i>  | <i>loaded</i>     | <i>kites</i> |
| <i>beehive</i> | <i>vast</i>      | <i>harvest</i> | <i>convenient</i> | <i>dry</i>   |

- Several people were flying \_\_\_\_\_ on the field.
- Russia is a \_\_\_\_\_ country with a lot of natural resources.
- My brother is learning to \_\_\_\_\_ a horse at the moment.
- Farmers often leave the rice in the sun to \_\_\_\_\_.
- They \_\_\_\_\_ the buffalo-drawn cart with hay.
- Farmers always need extra help with the \_\_\_\_\_.
- Local people are turning \_\_\_\_\_ into farmland.
- A \_\_\_\_\_ is a type of box that people use for keeping bees in.
- Is it \_\_\_\_\_ to meet you at the moment?
- My uncle raises a herd of \_\_\_\_\_ on his farm.

**IV. Fill in each blank with the correct adjective from the box.**

|                     |                  |              |                 |                |
|---------------------|------------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------|
| <i>slow</i>         | <i>vast</i>      | <i>quite</i> | <i>peaceful</i> | <i>nomadic</i> |
| <i>inconvenient</i> | <i>colourful</i> | <i>safe</i>  | <i>hard</i>     | <i>brave</i>   |

- Nick looks very funny – today he is wearing a \_\_\_\_\_ shirt.
- It will be very \_\_\_\_\_ for me to have no bicycle.
- Last Sunday our class visited a \_\_\_\_\_ village near our school.
- The dentist ask me to try to be \_\_\_\_\_ because it might hurt me a little.
- People have cut down trees in a/an \_\_\_\_\_ area of forest this year.
- On the Gobi Highland we can find several \_\_\_\_\_ tribes living on raising cattle.
- The life is usually \_\_\_\_\_ and quite in the countryside.
- Is it \_\_\_\_\_ to drink water from this home village.
- After he retired, he leads a \_\_\_\_\_ life in his home village.
- Many years ago my village was very poor and the living conditions were so \_\_\_\_\_.

**V. Complete the sentences, using the comparative form of the adjectives in the box.**

|                    |                  |             |              |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|-------------|--------------|------------------|
| <i>cheap</i>       | <i>expensive</i> | <i>good</i> | <i>small</i> | <i>hot</i>       |
| <i>intelligent</i> | <i>bad</i>       | <i>big</i>  | <i>hard</i>  | <i>important</i> |

- An elephant is \_\_\_\_\_ a mouse.
- The weather today is \_\_\_\_\_ it was yesterday.
- A diamond costs a lot of money. A diamond is \_\_\_\_\_ a ruby.
- A lake is \_\_\_\_\_ an ocean.
- A person can think logically. A person is \_\_\_\_\_ an animal.
- Good health is \_\_\_\_\_ money.
- I can buy a bicycle, but not a motorbike. A bicycle is \_\_\_\_\_ a motorbike.
- The last question is \_\_\_\_\_ the others.
- I think my second essay is \_\_\_\_\_ the first. There were many mistakes in the first essay.
- The food in a street market is \_\_\_\_\_ that in a supermarket.

**VI. Use the adjective in brackets in their correct forms of comparison to complete the sentences.**

1. Tea is \_\_\_\_\_ coffee. (cheap)
2. The new harvest machine is \_\_\_\_\_ than the old one. (effective)
3. The countryside is \_\_\_\_\_ the town. (beautiful)
4. A tractor is \_\_\_\_\_ a buffalo. (powerful)
5. My sister is \_\_\_\_\_ me. (tall)
6. Blue whales are \_\_\_\_\_ elephants. (heavy)
7. The Mekong River is \_\_\_\_\_ the Red River (long)
8. Do you think English is \_\_\_\_\_ French in grammar? (easy)
9. My new bed is \_\_\_\_\_ my old bed. (comfortable)
10. The film about my village town is \_\_\_\_\_ than the book. (interesting)

**VII. Complete the sentences, using the comparative form of the adverbs from the correspondent adjectives in the brackets.**

1. I like to eat \_\_\_\_\_, so I eat a lot of fruits and vegetables every day. (health)
2. It usually rains \_\_\_\_\_ in Central Viet Nam than in other region. (heavy)
3. I will have to try a bit \_\_\_\_\_ than this. (hard)
4. The hall was lighted \_\_\_\_\_ than the corridors. (bright)
5. Time goes by \_\_\_\_\_ when we are busy. (quick)
6. Our family has lived \_\_\_\_\_ in the country than in the town since last year. (happy)
7. The boys were playing the game \_\_\_\_\_ than the girls. (noisy)
8. This task can be completed \_\_\_\_\_ than that one. (easy)
9. A tractor can plough \_\_\_\_\_ than a buffalo or a horse. (good)

**VIII. Complete the sentences, using the comparative form of the adverbs from the correspondent adjectives in the box.**

|                    |              |                   |                |
|--------------------|--------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <i>generous</i>    | <i>bad</i>   | <i>optimistic</i> | <i>healthy</i> |
| <i>traditional</i> | <i>quick</i> | <i>sound</i>      | <i>good</i>    |

1. A baby can sleep \_\_\_\_\_ than an adult.
2. People in the country eat \_\_\_\_\_ than people in the city.
3. Our grandparents got dressed \_\_\_\_\_ than we do nowadays.
4. Nick speaks English \_\_\_\_\_ than I do.
5. That old lady donates \_\_\_\_\_ than her family members.
6. City people seem to apply modern techniques \_\_\_\_\_ than country people.
7. The scientist talked \_\_\_\_\_ about the future of young people in the country that local people.
8. The paddy fields in my village were \_\_\_\_\_ affected by the floods than the next village.

**IX. Complete the sentences with suitable forms of the adverbs given in the brackets.**

1. Nick is a careful write than Phuc. (carefully)  
Nick writes essays \_\_\_\_\_.
2. A snail is slower than a crab. (slowly)  
A snail moves \_\_\_\_\_.
3. My father's explanation about the subject was clearer than my brother's. (clearly)  
My father explained the subject \_\_\_\_\_.
4. My cousin is a better singer than I am. (well)  
My cousin sings \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Phong is a faster swimmer than Phuc. (fast)  
Phong swims \_\_\_\_\_.

**X. Fill in each blank in the appropriate form of the word in brackets.**

1. Iceland is considered the most \_\_\_\_\_ country in the world. (peace)
2. A \_\_\_\_\_ lifestyle has its advantages and disadvantages. (nomad)
3. My brother has been a stamp \_\_\_\_\_ for several years. (collect)
4. It is a/an \_\_\_\_\_ place to hold a picnic because it is too far from the road. (convenience)
5. Drinking water in some areas may be \_\_\_\_\_. (safe)
6. During my stay in the village, I was \_\_\_\_\_ with several local farmers. (friend)
7. Encouraging children to eat and drink \_\_\_\_\_ is very important. (health)



8. Local people in the village often wear their \_\_\_\_\_ costumes during the festivals. (tradition)
9. Please give \_\_\_\_\_ to that charity to help the homeless after the flood. (generous)
10. The baby slept very \_\_\_\_\_ because the bed was really comfortable. (sound)
12. There is a \_\_\_\_\_ of books on the shelf. (collect)
13. It is very \_\_\_\_\_ for people in remote areas to get to hospitals. (convenience)
14. He is very \_\_\_\_\_ with his hands. (skill)
15. It is said that water collected from the local streams is \_\_\_\_\_ to drink. (safe)
16. We want \_\_\_\_\_ relations with all countries. (friend)

**XI. Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage.**

Living in the country is something that people from the city often dream about. However, in reality, it has both advantages and disadvantages.

There are certainly many advantages to living in the country. First, you can enjoy peace and quietness. Moreover, people tend to be friendlier. A further advantage is that there is less traffic, so it is safer for young children.

However, there are certain disadvantages or drawbacks to life outside the city. First, because there are fewer people, you are likely to have few friends. In addition, entertainment is difficult to find, particularly in the evening. Furthermore, the fact that there are fewer shops and services means that it is hard to find jobs.

In short, it can be seen the country is more suitable for some people than others. On the whole, it is often the best for those who are retired or who have young children. In contrast, young people who have a career are better provided in the city.

- According to the passage, living in the country has \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. only good points  
B. only bad points  
C. both good and bad points  
D. no disadvantages
- How many advantages does living in the county have?  
A. two  
B. three  
C. four  
D. no
- Living in the country is safer for young children because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. there is less traffic  
B. there are few shops  
C. there are fewer people  
D. there are few services
- Which of the following statements is NOT true according to the passage?  
A. People in the country tend to be friendlier than people in the city.  
B. It's hard to find entertainment in the country.  
C. There are fewer shops and services in the country.  
D. The country is only suitable for retired people.
- Having few friends is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. one of drawbacks to life in the country  
B. the only disadvantage to living in the countryside  
C. one of certain drawbacks to life outside the city  
D. one of certain advantages to life outside the city

**XII. Choose the word or the phrase among A,B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.**

The country and the city have advantages and (1)\_\_\_\_. People in the country live in more beautiful surroundings. They enjoy (2)\_ and quietness, and can do their work at their (3)\_\_\_\_\_ pace because no one is in a (4)\_. They live in larger, more comfortable houses, and their neighbors are more friendly, and ready to help them (5). they need it. Their life, however, can be (6)\_ and they may be isolated, which is a serious problem (7) they are ill or want to take children to school.

The city has all the services that the country lacks, but it (8)\_\_\_\_\_ has a lot of disadvantages. Cities are often polluted. They not (9)\_\_\_\_\_ have polluted air but also have noisy streets. Everyone is always in a hurry and this (10)\_\_\_\_\_ that people have no time to get to know each other and make friends.

- |                    |                     |                     |                         |
|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <b>A.</b> joy   | <b>B.</b> enjoyment | <b>C.</b> happiness | <b>D.</b> disadvantages |
| 2. <b>A.</b> quiet | <b>B.</b> quietly   | <b>C.</b> peace     | <b>D.</b> peaceful      |
| 3. <b>A.</b> less  | <b>B.</b> own       | <b>C.</b> just      | <b>D.</b> only          |
| 4. <b>A.</b> hurry | <b>B.</b> hurried   | <b>C.</b> hurriedly | <b>D.</b> hurrying      |

- |              |            |             |          |
|--------------|------------|-------------|----------|
| 5. A. When   | B. which   | C. what     | D. that  |
| 6. A. bore   | B. bored   | C. boring   | D. bores |
| 7. A. unless | B. because | C. although | D. if    |
| 8. A. also   | B. yet     | C. already  | D. so    |
| 9. A. never  | B. ever    | C. hardly   | D. only  |
| 10. A. aims  | B. means   | C. asks     | D. said  |

**XIII. Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage.**

The country is more beautiful than a town and more pleasant to live in. Many people think so, and go to the country for the summer holidays though they cannot live there all the year round. Some have a cottage built in a village so that they can go there whenever they can find the time.

English villages are not all alike, but in some ways they are not very different from one another. Almost every village has a church, the round and square tower of which can be seen from many miles around. Surrounding the church is the churchyard, where people are buried.

The village green is a wide stretch of grass, the houses or cottages are built round it. Country life is now fairly comfortable and many villages have running water brought through pipes into each house. Most villages are so close to some small towns that people can go there to buy what they can't find in the village shops.

1. When do city people often go to the country?

- A. All the weekends.                      B. All the year round.  
C. At Christmas                              D. The summer holidays.

2. What is the advantage of city people when they have a cottage built in the village?

- A. They can have their houses rented.  
B. They can go to the country at weekends.  
C. They can go there whenever they can find the time.  
D. All the correct.

3. What is the common feature of English villages?

- A. They have a church  
B. They have a church with a tall tower, and a village green.  
C. They have a village green  
D. They have running water.

4. What is NOT mentioned in the life of English villages?

- A. The village green    B. The church                      C. Running water                      D. The Internet

5. What can villagers do when their villages are close to small towns?

- A. They can go there to buy whatever they want.  
B. They can go there to buy cheaper things.  
C. They can go there to buy what is not found in the village shops.  
D. They can go there to buy luxury goods.

**TEST 3 UNIT 2**

**I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.**

- |                        |                     |                      |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. a. <u>ri</u> de     | b. exc <u>i</u> te  | c. <u>ri</u> dden    | d. beeh <u>i</u> ve |
| 2. a. <u>pa</u> sture  | b. <u>va</u> st     | c. <u>br</u> ave     | d. <u>fa</u> rm     |
| 3. a. <u>ca</u> ttle   | b. <u>ci</u> rcular | c. <u>co</u> untry   | d. <u>co</u> llect  |
| 4. a. <u>ge</u> nerous | b. <u>ge</u> r      | c. <u>gr</u> assland | d. <u>gu</u> ess    |
| 5. a. <u>wo</u> rked   | b. <u>wa</u> tched  | c. <u>re</u> laxed   | d. <u>crow</u> ded  |

**II. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.**

- I went on a trip to the countryside and had my first experience \_\_\_\_\_ farm work.  
a. on                      b. with                      c. for                      d. of
- We usually spend our holiday in the village \_\_\_\_\_ our grandparents live.  
a. what                      b. where                      c. which                      d. when
- I think country life is so boring and \_\_\_\_\_ because you're not close to shops and services.  
a. unhealthy                      b. inconvenient                      c. comfortable                      d. peaceful
- On the farm, uncle Duong showed us how to \_\_\_\_\_ cucumbers.  
a. plough                      b. produce                      c. pick                      d. put up
- Mongolian children start to learn \_\_\_\_\_ before they can walk.

- a. horse riding      b. riding horse      c. ride horse      d. horse ridden
6. On the side of the road, a herd boy was herding \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. kites      b. hay      c. cattle      d. blackberries
7. Mongolian children learn to ride when they are \_\_\_\_\_ as three years old.  
a. as young      b. younger      c. younger than      d. so young
8. Does your new stereo play music \_\_\_\_\_ than your old one did?  
a. louder      b. more loudly      c. loudlier      d. more louder
9. Countryside is not polluted \_\_\_\_\_ you can breathe there fresh air.  
a. although      b. however      c. therefore      d. as
10. 'Children in my village often fly their kites in dry rice fields.' '\_\_\_\_\_',  
a. It's right up my street!      b. That's awesome.  
c. Exactly what I want.      d. How interesting!

### III. Match the word or phrase with its definition.

- |                       |                                                                            |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. buffalo drawn cart | a. a circular wooden canvas and felt tent                                  |
| 2. harvest time       | b. land covered with grass where sheep, cows, horses, etc., feed           |
| 3. paddy field        | c. a vehicle with two or four wheels pulled by buffalo                     |
| 4. cattle             | d. a structure where bees are kept for producing honey                     |
| 5. pasture            | e. cows and bulls that are kept as farm animals                            |
| 6. ger                | f. a high mountainous area of a country                                    |
| 7. beehive            | g. a field in which rice is grown                                          |
| 8. highlands          | h. the time of year when crops are cut and collected from the fields       |
| 9. dairy products     | i. a member of a community that moves with its animals from place to place |
| 10. nomad             | j. food made from milk, such as butter and cheese                          |

### IV. Complete the sentences with the adjectives from the box.

|          |          |            |       |              |
|----------|----------|------------|-------|--------------|
| generous | peaceful | optimistic | quiet | inconvenient |
| fresh    | brave    | exciting   | vast  | skillful     |
|          |          |            |       | envious      |

- It's \_\_\_\_\_ to see a kite flying high in the sky.
- It was very \_\_\_\_\_ there; you could just hear the wind moving in the trees.
- I love the \_\_\_\_\_ open spaces and the \_\_\_\_\_ air in the countryside.
- The villagers often find it \_\_\_\_\_ to get into town due to the lack of public transport.
- People in rural areas are more \_\_\_\_\_ than their city counterparts.
- I'm so \_\_\_\_\_ of you getting such an exciting holiday.
- Billy is clearly a \_\_\_\_\_ person. He contributed lots of money to charity.
- It was very \_\_\_\_\_ of him to jump into the river to save a drowning child.
- Most of Mongolian people are \_\_\_\_\_ at riding a horse.
- Life in the countryside is more \_\_\_\_\_ and healthier.

### V. Put the words in the box in the correct rows.

|              |       |            |              |        |          |            |           |
|--------------|-------|------------|--------------|--------|----------|------------|-----------|
| strawberries | hay   | a donkey   | a fence      | sheep  | flowers  | rice straw | a horse   |
| a tent       | grass | a building | grapes       | cattle | a camel  | a memorial | rainwater |
| a bike       | roses | buffaloes  | a motorcycle | cows   | lettuces | a poster   | stamps    |
|              |       |            |              |        |          | goats      |           |

- ◆ride: \_\_\_\_\_
- ◆herd: \_\_\_\_\_
- ◆collect: \_\_\_\_\_
- ◆pick: \_\_\_\_\_
- ◆put up: \_\_\_\_\_

### VI. Underline the correct form of the word.

- We've all been working very *hard* / *hardly* and now we're tired
- Our school Internet connection is really *slow* / *slowly*.
- What's the matter with him? He looks *angry* / *angrily*.
- The children are playing *quiet* / *quietly* in the garden.
- Rural areas are *common* / *commonly* known as the countryside or a village.

6. Nomadic children are very *brave* / *bravely* to learn to ride a horse at the age of five.
7. The sun is shining *bright* / *brightly* through the trees.
8. We all find living in the city very *stressful* / *stressfully*.
9. Don't talk so *fast* / *fastly*— I can't understand what you're saying.
10. John was a kindly and *generous* / *generously* man.

**VII. Complete the sentences with the comparative form of adverbs in the box. Add 'than' where necessary.**

carefully    hard    quietly    slowly    healthily    well    badly    quickly    far    fast

1. The teacher spoke \_\_\_\_\_ to help us to understand.
2. She answered all the questions \_\_\_\_\_ the other students and she got a very good mark.
3. The Spanish athlete ran \_\_\_\_\_ the other runners, so he won the race.
4. Jim threw the ball \_\_\_\_\_ Peter.
5. This street is crowded and narrow. Couldn't you drive a bit \_\_\_\_\_?
6. These days we are eating \_\_\_\_\_ ever before.
7. I did \_\_\_\_\_ on the test than Mark did. He got an A+ and I just got an A.
8. Machines can help farmers harvest \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Does more money make you work \_\_\_\_\_?
10. You're talking so loudly. Could you speak a bit \_\_\_\_\_, please?

**VII. Underline the correct words or phrases.**

1. Cattle usually cross over the road. You should drive *more careful* / *more carefully*.
2. Life in some parts of the country is *boring* / *more boring* than that in other parts.
3. The old usually get up *earlier* / *more early* than the young.
4. An ox doesn't plough *weller* / *better* than a buffalo.
5. These 7 thinking habits will help you become *more confident* / *more confidently*.
6. Don't worry. The river is not as *deep* / *deeper* as it looks.
7. After a hard working day, you may sleep *soundlier* / *more soundly* than usual.
8. My father has been much *healthier* / *more healthy* since he stopped smoking.
9. The air in the mountainous zones is *more fresh* / *fresher* than that in the cities.
10. I can't understand. Would you ask him to speak *clearlier* / *more clearly*?

**VIII. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.**

1. Some people think that health is \_\_\_\_\_ than money. (important)
2. The pollution in our city is much \_\_\_\_\_ than it used to be. (bad)
3. My new teacher explained the lessons \_\_\_\_\_ than my old teacher. (clear)
4. He doesn't play volleyball as \_\_\_\_\_ as his brother. (good)
5. Get rid of the sorrow! You will do it \_\_\_\_\_ next time. (good)
6. Communication is a lot \_\_\_\_\_ than it was 50 years ago. (easy)
7. People in rural areas wear \_\_\_\_\_ than those in cities. (simple)
8. Robert arrived at the meeting \_\_\_\_\_ than Francis. (late)
9. These trousers are too wide. Do you have any that are \_\_\_\_\_? (narrow)
10. My mother always gets up \_\_\_\_\_ than everybody else in the house. (early)
11. Rene speaks \_\_\_\_\_ than the other ESL students in the class. (fluent)
12. Can't you think of anything \_\_\_\_\_ to say? (intelligent)
13. I think his new book is much \_\_\_\_\_ than his last one. (boring)
14. Max finished the homework \_\_\_\_\_ than anyone else in the class. (fast)
15. He doesn't look as \_\_\_\_\_ as he used to. (happy)

**IX. Write the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.**

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ (play) football this afternoon. Do you want to play too?
2. Could you meet me at the airport tomorrow? My flight \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) at six.
3. Last summer, my friends and I \_\_\_\_\_ (spend) our holiday on a farm.
4. Nick \_\_\_\_\_ (not ride) a buffalo drawn cart before.
5. The cattle \_\_\_\_\_ (graze) on the green pastures right now.
6. Millions of Mongolians \_\_\_\_\_ (be) semi-nomadic herders for thousands of years.
7. My family \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in a small town for ten years before moving to Boston.



8. Country life \_\_\_\_\_ (not excite) me at all. It's so boring.
9. Nick would like \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) the countryside at the harvest time.
10. I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) for 1.5 hours on the weekend to get out to the countryside.

**X. Write the correct form of the word in brackets.**

1. People seem to have lost their \_\_\_\_\_ in boating on small rivers. (enjoy)
2. More and more \_\_\_\_\_ are leaving the countryside to city. (farm)
3. A town has a \_\_\_\_\_ population than a village does. (large)
4. Sylvia likes the \_\_\_\_\_ atmosphere during her stay in the valley. (peace)
5. The firefighters were praised for their \_\_\_\_\_ and devotion to duty. (brave)
6. Visually the house is very pleasing, but it's \_\_\_\_\_. (comfort)
7. It is true that the city can provide much \_\_\_\_\_. (convenient)
8. Agricultural work is \_\_\_\_\_ seen as a male occupation. (tradition)
9. Villages and towns are not as densely \_\_\_\_\_ as cities. (populate)
10. The trip was an \_\_\_\_\_ experience. We enjoyed it very much! (forget)

**XI. Match the questions with the answers.**

- |                                                   |                               |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Which is better, city life or rural life?      | a. Yes, there are some.       |
| 2. From whom did you learn to make kites?         | b. At harvest time.           |
| 3. Where can you fly a kite in your village?      | c. My father.                 |
| 4. Why do you store the hay?                      | d. Its peacefulness.          |
| 5. Do you think country people are friendlier?    | e. Both have pros and cons.   |
| 6. When would you like to visit the countryside?  | f. To feed our cattle.        |
| 7. Are there any street markets in your hometown? | g. In dry paddy fields.       |
| 8. What do you love most about countryside?       | h. Yes. They're also happier. |

**XII. Choose the word which best fits each gap.**

Although the city seems to have a lot of great things, the country can offer as (1) \_\_\_\_\_ satisfaction as well. The country is a marvelous place to live in. It offers a very relaxing feeling, and it is filled (2) \_\_\_\_\_ magnificent views and scenery. Rural towns offer more open space than cities and aren't overcrowded. The country can also maybe help you become a more independent and (3) \_\_\_\_\_ person. You can buy a small piece of land, plough it and put some (4) \_\_\_\_\_ in order to grow your own vegetables. This way you (5) \_\_\_\_\_ your own crops, and eat and live in a very healthy way. (6) \_\_\_\_\_, being in the countryside makes you more of an outdoor person often enjoying the voices and wild places of nature. Not everyone is (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to the city life and not everyone has the desire to live permanently in the countryside. It is a matter of perspective and personal point of (8) \_\_\_\_\_.

- |                   |            |              |                |
|-------------------|------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. a. most        | b. more    | c. much      | d. many        |
| 2. a. in          | b. out     | c. up        | d. with        |
| 3. a. active      | b. idle    | c. passive   | d. quiet       |
| 4. a. weeds       | b. seeds   | c. breeds    | d. branches    |
| 5. a. collect     | b. damage  | c. complete  | d. rotate      |
| 6. a. By contrast | b. However | c. Therefore | d. In addition |
| 7. a. Interested  | b. bored   | c. suited    | d. excited     |
| 8. a. care        | b. view    | C. contact   | d. way         |

**XIII. Read the text carefully, then choose the correct answers.**

For 3,000 years, Mongolians have lived in the rural areas, adopting a pastoral way of life, moving in the search of new pastures. They depend largely on their livestock for a living and sustain themselves with what they can get from the land. Today, approximately half of Mongolia's population is still roaming the vast plains living in the ger and moving their campings several times a year. Nomadic life thrives in summer and survives in winter. When temperatures are warm, they work hard on their farms to get milk and make *airag*, consuming meat from their sheeps and goats. Once winter comes, temperatures dip extremely low and they stay indoors and survive on horse meat.

With the rise of technology, changes in the Mongolian nomadic lifestyle are almost inevitable. While they still lead their lifestyle as pastoral herders, many use motorbikes to herd cattle and horses. To move their homes, trucks have taken the place of ox carts. Solar panels are also becoming an addition to the ger, giving them access to electricity without being confined to one place. The nomads use solar energy to power television sets and mobile phones.

1. Mongolians regularly move from place to place in order to \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. look for food for their family
  - b. find pastures for their livestock
  - c. herd their cattle and horses
  - d. sell their animals and farm products
2. How many Mongolians still live a traditional nomadic life?
    - a. Close to 40 percent
    - b. More than 50 percent
    - c. About 50 percent
    - d. Approximately 60 percent
  3. What is a ger?
    - a. A portable, round tent
    - b. A thatched house
    - c. A circular house made of snow
    - d. A wooden hut
  4. What is the Mongolian's main food in winter?
    - a. airag
    - b. goat meat
    - c. sheep meat
    - d. horse meat
  5. Today, Mongolian nomads \_\_\_\_\_.
    - a. don't lead their lifestyle as herders any more
    - b. use ox carts to move their homes
    - c. use solar energy to power electronic devices
    - d. have the advantage of urban life
  6. Which of the followings is NOT true about Mongolian nomads?
    - a. They live in the countryside.
    - b. They live by and for their livestock.
    - c. They work hard in winter when the temperature dip very low.
    - d. They are now taking advantage of technology.

**XIV. Read the text carefully, then answer the questions.**

Many people enjoy living in a big city because they think life is more exciting there. However, I come from a small village and in my view, there are lots of benefits. The main reason I prefer village life is because it's very quiet, so I always feel calm when I'm here. Another reason is that the air is so fresh and clean. We have more green spaces and bigger gardens, too. In addition, I think the people here are friendlier. Personally, I'm interested in wildlife photography, so the countryside is perfect for me.

The only downside is transport. I have an early start for a long Journey to school in Faro and the school bus is always stopping to pick up more people. Also, it's boring sometimes, but I enjoy chatting to my friends. Fortunately, I'm learning to ride a moped. On balance, I disagree that city life is better, as I think my village lifestyle is healthier and more relaxing. In spite of that, some of my friends couldn't cope with life in the country, so it comes down to personal opinion.

1. Where does the writer come from?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Does he like living in a big city?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Why does he prefer village life?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. How does he think about the people in his village?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. According to the writer, what is the disadvantage of living in the village?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. How does he go to school?  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Does he think city life is better than village life?  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. What is he interested in?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**UNIT 3: PEOPLES OF VIET NAM**

**A. VOCABULARY**

1. ancestor (n) /'ænsɛstə(r)/: ông cha, tổ tiên
2. basic (adj) /'beɪsɪk/: cơ bản
3. complicated (adj) /'kɒmplɪkeɪtɪd/: tinh vi, phức tạp
4. costume (n) /'kɒstju:m/: trang phục

5. curious (adj) /'kjʊəriəs/: tò mò, muốn tìm hiểu
6. custom (n) /'kʌstəm/: tập quán, phong tục
7. diverse (adj) /daɪ'vɜ:s/: đa dạng
8. diversity (n) /daɪ'vɜ:səti/: sự đa dạng, phong phú
9. ethnic (adj) /'eθnik/ (thuộc): dân tộc
10. ethnic group (n) /'eθnik gru:p/ (nhóm): dân tộc
11. ethnic minority people (n) /'eθnik maɪ'nɔrəti 'pi:pl/: người dân tộc thiểu số
12. gather (v) /'gæðə(r)/: thu thập, hái lượm
13. heritage (n) /'herɪtɪdʒ/: di sản
14. hunt (v) /hʌnt/: săn bắt
15. insignificant (adj) /,ɪnsɪg'nɪfɪkənt/: không quan trọng, không ý nghĩa
16. majority (n) /mə'dʒɔrəti/: đa số
17. minority (n) /maɪ'nɔrəti/: thiểu số
18. multicultural (adj) /,mʌlti'kʌltʃərəl/: đa văn hóa
19. recognise (v) /'rekəɡnaɪz/: công nhận, xác nhận
20. shawl (n) /ʃɔ:l/: khăn quàng
21. speciality (n) /,speʃi'æləti/: đặc sản
22. stilt house (n) /stɪlt haʊs/ nhà sàn
23. terraced field (n) /'terəst fi:ld/: ruộng bậc thang
24. tradition (n) /trə'dɪʃn/: truyền thống
25. unique (adj) /ju'ni:k/: độc nhất, độc đáo
26. waterwheel (n) /'wɔ:təwi:l/: cối xay nước

## B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### I. ÔN TẬP CÂU HỎI. (QUESTION)

Theo quy tắc ngữ pháp, khi là câu hỏi thì chúng ta cần đảo trợ động từ (auxiliary verbs) lên trước chủ ngữ

#### 1. Câu hỏi Yes/No (Yes/No Questions)

Câu hỏi dạng Yes/No Questions là dạng câu hỏi đòi hỏi câu trả lời là Yes (có) hoặc No (không).

| Cấu trúc                                                   | Ví dụ                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Trợ động từ (be/ do/ does) + chủ ngữ (S) + động từ + ....? | Isn't Lan going to school today?<br>Hôm nay Lan đi học phải không? |
| Yes, S + trợ động từ / tobe.                               | Yes, she is. (đúng vậy)                                            |
| Hoặc                                                       | Was Hung sick yesterday?                                           |
| No, S + trợ động từ / tobe + not                           | No, he wasn't. (không, anh ấy không bệnh)                          |

#### 2. Wh-question

Trong tiếng Anh, khi chúng ta cần hỏi rõ ràng và cần có câu trả lời cụ thể, ta dùng câu hỏi với các từ để hỏi.

Loại câu hỏi này được gọi là câu hỏi trực tiếp (direct questions)

##### a. Các từ dùng để hỏi trong tiếng Anh

|                              |                                         |                                |                     |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| Who (Ai) (chức năng chủ ngữ) | Whom (Ai) (chức năng tân ngữ)           | What (Cái gì)                  | Whose (Của ai)      |
| Where (Ở đâu)                | Which (cái nào) (để hỏi về sự lựa chọn) | When (Khi nào)                 | Why (Tại sao)       |
| How (như thế nào)            | How much (Bao nhiêu)                    | How many (Bao nhiêu, số lượng) | How long (Bao lâu)  |
| How far (Bao xa)             | How old (Bao nhiêu tuổi)                | How often (Bao nhiêu lần)      | What time (Mấy giờ) |

#### Các cấu trúc câu hỏi WH thường gặp

- Nguyên tắc đặt câu hỏi
- Nếu chưa có trợ động từ thì phải mượn trợ động từ :do/ does/ did
- Nếu trợ động từ có sẵn (am/is/are/can /will/shall/would/could) thì đảo chúng ra trước chủ ngữ, không mượn do/does/did nữa.
- Cấu trúc thông thường của loại câu hỏi Wh-questions



Từ để hỏi thường được viết ở đầu câu hỏi. Từ để hỏi có thể làm chủ ngữ (subject) hay tân ngữ (object) và bổ ngữ.

| Dạng                                     | Cấu trúc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Chú ý                                                            |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Dạng 1:</b><br><b>Câu hỏi tân ngữ</b> | <b>Wh-word + auxiliary + S + V + object?</b><br>Từ để hỏi + trợ động từ + chủ ngữ + động từ chính + (tân ngữ)<br>Ví dụ:<br>Where do you live? (Anh sống ở đâu?)<br>What are you doing? (Anh đang làm gì thế?)<br>Whom do you meet this morning? (Anh gặp lại ai sáng nay?) (Whom là tân ngữ của động từ “meet”)<br>Who are you going with? (Bạn sẽ đi với ai?)               | <b>Object</b> là danh từ, đại từ đứng sau động từ hoặc giới từ.  |
| <b>Dạng 2:</b><br><b>Câu hỏi bổ ngữ</b>  | <b>Wh-word + tobe + S + complement?</b><br>(Từ để hỏi + động từ tobe + chủ ngữ + bổ ngữ)<br>Ví dụ.<br>Where is John? (John ở đâu?)<br>Who are you? (Bạn là ai?)<br>Whose is this umbrella? (Cái ô này của ai?)<br>Who is the head of your school? (Hiệu trưởng của trường anh là ai?)                                                                                        | Bổ ngữ là danh từ hoặc tính từ<br>Động từ tobe chia theo chủ ngữ |
| <b>Dạng 3:</b><br><b>Câu hỏi chủ ngữ</b> | <b>Wh-word + V + object?</b><br>(Từ để hỏi + động từ chính + tân ngữ)<br>Ví dụ.<br>Who lives in London with Daisy? (Ai sống ở London cùng với Daisy vậy?)<br>Who is opening the door? (Ai đang mở cửa đây?)<br>Who teaches you English? (Ai dạy bạn Tiếng Anh?)<br>Which is better? (Cái/loại nào tốt hơn?)<br>What caused the accident? (Nguyên nhân gì đã gây ra tai nạn?) | Động từ chính luôn được chia theo ngôi thứ 3 số ít.              |

### C.Trường hợp câu hỏi đặc biệt với WHICH

| Cách dùng                                                                                                                                                                       | Ví dụ                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| “Which” được sử dụng thay thế cho What và Who khi ta muốn hỏi ai đó chính xác về người hay vật trong một số lượng nhất định. Người nghe phải chọn trong giới hạn ấy để trả lời. | Which of you can't do this exercise? (Em nào (trong số các em) không làm được bài tập này?)<br>Which way to the station, please? (Cho hỏi đường nào đi đến ga ạ?) |

### B. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN.

#### Bài 1: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng.

- \_\_\_\_\_ is your cat? It is two months old.  
A. How old                      B. When                      C. How much
- \_\_\_\_\_ did you begin working part-time here?  
A. How long                      B. When                      C. How much
- \_\_\_\_\_ people are there in the conference room?  
A. How                      B. Howmany                      C. How much
- \_\_\_\_\_ time will you spend on your new carpet?

- A. How long      B. Howmany      C. How much
5. \_\_\_\_\_ do these shoes cost?
- A. How long      B. Howmany      C. How much
6. \_\_\_\_\_ do you go to the gym?
- A. How      B. How often      C. How long
7. \_\_\_\_\_ did you get to work yesterday? I took a taxi because my car was broken.
- A. How      B. Why      C. When
8. \_\_\_\_\_ were you late for work yesterday? - Because of the traffic jam
- A. How      B. Why      C. When
9. \_\_\_\_\_ does this laptop belong to? It belongs to Jim.
- A. Who      B. Whose      C. Which
10. \_\_\_\_\_ bag was stolen yesterday?
- A. Who      B. Whose      C. Which
11. \_\_\_\_\_ will you travel to this summer? I haven't decided yet.
- A. Where      B. What      C. Who
12. \_\_\_\_\_ did you sell yesterday? - Bread and cupcakes.
- A. What      B. Who      C. Which
13. \_\_\_\_\_ dress did she buy? -The red or the blue one?
- A. What      B. Whose      C. Which
14. \_\_\_\_\_ is playing the piano upstairs?
- A. Who      B. Whose      C. Whom
15. To \_\_\_\_\_ should I address the letter?
- A. Who      B. Whose      C. Whom

**Bài 2: Điền từ thích hợp để hoàn thành các câu sau.**

- \_\_\_\_\_ have you give up smoking? For about two years.
- \_\_\_\_\_ place is more densely populated – Ha noi or Ho Chi Minh City?
- \_\_\_\_\_ broken Jane's favorite vase? Her brother did it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ does Mr. Brown do? He's a reseacher.
- \_\_\_\_\_ ethnic groups are there in your country?
- \_\_\_\_\_ is your grandmother? She's ninety years old.
- \_\_\_\_\_ does your English teacher look like? She's young and pretty.
- \_\_\_\_\_ water should we drink every day?
- \_\_\_\_\_ did you use to go to school? I used to go on foot.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is it from here to the nearest police station?
- \_\_\_\_\_ songs is this singer performing? He is performing Trinh Cong Son's songs.
- \_\_\_\_\_ was Ms Ann born? She was born in a small village.
- \_\_\_\_\_ did you have for breakfast? - Bread and eggs.
- \_\_\_\_\_ didn't you invite Jim to the senior prom?
- \_\_\_\_\_ do they meet each other? - Almost every day.

**Bài3. Nối câu hỏi ở cột A với câu trả lời ở cột B sao cho thích hợp.**

| A                                              | B                            |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. How much did you pay for that radio?        | a. For 6 years               |
| 2. How long have you worked as an engineer?    | b. About 6 kilometers        |
| 3. When did you start your career as a singer? | c. It's near the local park. |
| 4. How far is it from here to Tom's mansion?   | d. I prefer tea.             |
| 5. Where is the vet's located?                 | e. 10 dollars                |
| 6. How often do you go travelling?             | f. It's mine                 |
| 7. Which do you prefer: tea or coffee?         | g. 6 years ago               |
| 8. Whose luggage is it?                        | h. Once or twice a year.     |

- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

**Bài4. Điền một từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống để hoàn thành những câu hỏi dưới đây**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ you like chocolate?
2. When \_\_\_\_\_ you begin studying here? 2 years ago.
3. Which movie \_\_\_\_\_ you watch last night?
4. How far \_\_\_\_\_ it from here to the town center?
5. How long \_\_\_\_\_ Ann and James been friends with each other?
6. What \_\_\_\_\_ you do tomorrow? I will just lie in my bed and read books.
7. Who \_\_\_\_\_ you pick up yesterday?
8. How old \_\_\_\_\_ they?
9. How many rooms \_\_\_\_\_ there in your house?
10. Who \_\_\_\_\_ sleeping in your room?
11. \_\_\_\_\_ you found your keys? No, I haven't found them yet.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ you travel to a mountainous area last summer?
13. How often \_\_\_\_\_ Ann visit her grandmother?
14. What \_\_\_\_\_ you use to do before your retirement?
15. Where \_\_\_\_\_ Jim going to? He is going to the library?

**Bài5. Dựa vào từ cho sẵn, viết câu hỏi hoàn chỉnh**

1. How many/ groups of people/ there/ in your country?  
.....
2. How/ your/ party/ last week?  
.....
3. How/ you/go/ school/ yesterday?  
.....
4. Whose/ cat/ it?  
.....
5. Jim/ learn/ Geography/ at the moment?  
.....
6. You/ ever/ see/ terraced fields?  
.....
7. What/ kind of animal/ the farmers/ raise/ in your country?  
.....
8. What time/ the concert/ start?  
.....
9. How far/ it/ from/ your house/ to the local school?  
.....
10. You/ come/ my birthday party/ tomorrow?  
.....
11. Where/ you/go/ last summer?  
.....
12. How much/ money/ you/spend/on clothes/ last month?  
.....
13. How/ ethnic people/ dress/ in special occasions?  
.....
14. Who/ swim/ in the swimming pool/ now?  
.....
15. How often/ Mr. Smith/ now/ the lawn?

**II. MẠO TỬ KHÔNG XÁC ĐỊNH : A/ AN**

**A. Lý thuyết**

1. A đứng trước một phụ âm hoặc một nguyên âm (**a, e, i, o, u**) có âm là phụ âm.
  - a game (một trò chơi); a boat (một chiếc tàu thủy)
  - a university (một trường đại học); a year (một năm)
  - a European (một người Âu); a one-legged man (một người thọt chân)
2. An đứng trước một nguyên âm hoặc một **h** câm.

- **an** egg (một quả trứng); **an** ant (một con kiến)
- **an** honour (một niềm vinh dự); **an** hour (một giờ đồng hồ)

3. **An** cũng đứng trước các mẫu tự đặc biệt đọc như một nguyên âm.

- **an** SOS (một tín hiệu cấp cứu); **an** MSc (một thạc sĩ khoa học), **an** X-ray (một tia X)

4. **A/An** có hình thức giống nhau ở tất cả các giống.

- **a** tiger (một con cọp); **a** tigress (một con cọp cái)
- **an** uncle (một ông chú); **an** aunt (một bà dì)

### B. Ví dụ:

1. Trước một danh từ số ít đếm được.

- We need **a** computer. (Chúng tôi cần một máy vi tính)
- He eats **an** ice-cream. (Anh ta ăn một cây kem)

2. Trước một danh từ làm bổ túc từ (kể cả danh từ chỉ nghề nghiệp)

- It was **a** tempest. (Đó là một trận bão dữ dội)
- She'll be **a** musician. (Cô ta sẽ là một nhạc sĩ)
- Peter is **an** actor. (Peter là một diễn viên)

3. Trong các thành ngữ chỉ số lượng nhất định

- **a** lot (nhiều); **a** couple (một cặp/đôi); **a** third (một phần ba)
- **a** dozen (một tá); **a** hundred (một trăm); **a** quarter (một phần tư)

4. Trong các thành ngữ chỉ giá cả, tốc độ, tỉ lệ ...

- 90 kilometres **an** hour (chín mươi kilomet/giờ)
- 4 times **a** day (bốn lần mỗi ngày)
- 2 dollars **a** litre (hai đô la một lít)

(**a/an** = **per** (mỗi))

5. Trong các thành ngữ chỉ sự cảm thán

- What **a** pity! (thật đáng tiếc!)
- Such **a** picturesque hill! (một ngọn đồi thật thơ mộng!)
- What **a** beautiful painting! (một bức tranh tuyệt vời!)

6. **a** có thể đứng trước Mr/Mrs/Miss + họ

- **a** Mr Smith, **a** Mrs Smith, **a** Miss Smith

### III. MẠO TỪ XÁC ĐỊNH : THE

**The** dùng cho cả danh từ đếm được (số ít lẫn số nhiều) và danh từ không đếm được.

**The** truth (sự thật)

**The** time (thời gian)

**The** bicycle (một chiếc xe đạp)

**The** bicycles (những chiếc xe đạp)

• **Không dùng mạo từ xác định:**

1. Trước tên quốc gia, tên châu lục, tên núi, tên hồ, tên đường.

*Europe (Châu Âu), South America (Nam Mỹ), France (nước Pháp)*

2. Khi danh từ không đếm được hoặc danh từ số nhiều dùng theo nghĩa chung nhất, chứ không chỉ riêng trường hợp nào.

- I don't like French beer. (Tôi chẳng thích bia của Pháp.)
- I don't like Mondays. (Tôi chẳng thích những ngày thứ Hai.)

3. Trước danh từ trừu tượng, trừ phi danh từ đó chỉ một trường hợp cá biệt.

- Men fear death. (Con người sợ cái chết.)

(But) - **The** death of **the** President made his country acephalous.

(Cái chết của vị tổng thống đã khiến cho đất nước ông không có người lãnh đạo).

4. Sau sở hữu tính từ hoặc sau danh từ ở sở hữu cách

- **My** friend, **chứ không nói** *My the friend*
- **The** girl's mother = **the** mother of **the** girl (Mẹ của cô gái)

5. Trước tên gọi các bữa ăn

- They invited some friends to dinner. (Họ đã mời vài người bạn đến ăn tối)

6. Trước các tước hiệu

- President Roosevelt (Tổng thống Roosevelt)
- King Louis XIV of France (Vua Louis XIV của Pháp)

7. Trong các trường hợp sau đây

- Women are always fond of music. (Phụ nữ luôn thích âm nhạc.)
- Come by car/ by bus (Đến bằng xe ô tô/ xe buýt)
- In spring/ in autumn (Vào mùa xuân/ mùa thu), last night (đêm qua), next year (năm tới), from beginning to end (từ đầu tới cuối), from left to right (từ trái sang phải)
- Play golf/ chess/ cards/ football/..... (chơi gôn/ đánh cờ/ đánh bài)

## BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

**Bài 6. Điền mạo từ ‘a’ hoặc ‘an’ trước những danh từ sau:**

**BÀI 7: Điền mạo từ ‘a’, ‘an’ hoặc 0 vào chỗ trống sao cho thích hợp.**

1. She asked me for \_\_\_ information about the meeting.
2. They will move to \_\_\_ mansion next month.
3. I'd like \_\_\_ grapefruit and \_\_\_ orange juice.
4. \_\_\_ award was given to Jim yesterday.
5. We read \_\_\_ books and play \_\_\_ games when we have free time.
6. Jim doesn't want to borrow \_\_\_ money from anyone.
7. My friend and I threw \_\_\_ party last week.
8. It was \_\_\_ honor to be invited here today.
9. I've bought \_\_\_ umbrella for my sister.
10. My family often have \_\_\_ eggs for breakfast.
11. Would you like \_\_\_ cup of tea?
12. My brother doesn't like \_\_\_ cats.
13. Is there \_\_\_ post office here?
14. I spend \_\_\_ hours on my DIY project.
15. Mr. Peter used to be \_\_\_ famous vet.

**BÀI 8: Điền mạo từ ‘a’, ‘an’ hoặc ‘the’ vào chỗ trống sao cho phù hợp.**

1. We have \_\_\_ cat and \_\_\_ dog, \_\_\_ cat doesn't get on well with \_\_\_ dog.
2. You can see \_\_\_ moon clearly in the Mid-Autumn festival.
3. He is \_\_\_ famous actor.
4. My brother doesn't like \_\_\_ present I gave him.
5. Where is \_\_\_ book I lent you last week?
6. My father works as \_\_\_ electrician.
7. Have you ever heard about \_\_\_ River Thames?
8. I want to travel around \_\_\_ world when I grow up.
9. Yesterday my mother had \_\_\_ terrible headache.
10. Where are \_\_\_ kids? They are playing outside.
11. Peter is \_\_\_ most hard-working student I've ever known.
12. It is cold because \_\_\_ heating systems is broken.
13. Did you buy \_\_\_ pair of shoes yesterday?
14. \_\_\_ Earth orbits around \_\_\_ Sun.
15. She took \_\_\_ hamburger and \_\_\_ apple, but she didn't eat \_\_\_ apple.
16. A boy and a girl is arguing over there, I think I know \_\_\_ boy.
17. My grandfather sent me \_\_\_ letter and \_\_\_ gift but I haven't received \_\_\_ letter.
18. My mom is \_\_\_ best mom in \_\_\_ world.
19. Would you like \_\_\_ glass of water?
20. James offered me \_\_\_ cup of coffee and \_\_\_ piece of cake. \_\_\_ cake is delicious.

**BÀI 9: Đánh dấu (V) trước câu đúng, đánh dấu (X) trước câu sai và sửa lại cho đúng.**

1. There is an big apple in the refrigerator. \_\_\_\_\_
2. It took me the hour to finish my homework. \_\_\_\_\_
3. I don't know a full name of my manager. \_\_\_\_\_
4. They are most beautiful creature on earth. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Mary is studying at a university in Hanoi. \_\_\_\_\_

6. This is an unique custom of this ethnic group. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Did you enjoy a party last night? \_\_\_\_\_
8. The sun is shining brightly. \_\_\_\_\_
9. No one in my family likes drinking a beer. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Peter is a friend of mine. \_\_\_\_\_

### BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO.

#### Bài 10. Đặt câu hỏi cho phần gạch chân trong những câu trả lời sau.

1. Jim has recently experienced the life of ethnic people in Vietnam.  
.....?
2. The ethnic minorities in Vietnam often live in mountainous areas.  
.....?
3. Their costumes are colorful and unique.  
.....?
4. They often gather together at the communal house in special occasions.  
.....?
5. The chief of the community often tell tales of heroes to the people at the communal house  
.....?
6. Ethnic people often hold festivals in spring.  
.....?
7. Life in the mountainous areas is quite difficult because of the extreme weather.  
.....?
8. In the remote areas, it may take people half a day to travel from their house to the market.  
.....?
9. Shortage in electricity and fresh water supply makes life in remote areas so difficult.  
.....?
10. The local authorities try to help the ethnic minorities by teaching them effective farming methods.  
.....?

#### BÀI 11: Điền mạo từ “a”, “an”, “the” hoặc 0 vào chỗ trống sao cho phù hợp.

1. Farmers in my hometown earn a living by raising \_\_\_\_\_poultry.
2. Some villagers play \_\_\_\_\_ flute in special occasions.
3. Do you know there is \_\_\_\_\_ local folk festival tonight?
4. I like \_\_\_\_\_colourful costumes of \_\_\_\_\_ethnic minority people in Vietnam.
5. \_\_\_\_\_cattle are often raised in the rural areas in my country.
6. When I travel to \_\_\_\_\_ foreign country, I always want to try \_\_\_\_\_local specialities first.
7. Have you ever been to \_\_\_\_\_remote area?
8. Ethnic minority people often gather together at \_\_\_\_\_communal house
9. In Tay Nguyen, people sometimes ride \_\_\_\_\_elephants.
10. \_\_\_\_\_traditional customs of Vietnam are totally different from \_\_\_\_\_customs of Western countries.

#### Bài 12: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. When/ bank/ open/ every day?  
.....?
2. You/ have/ bread/ and/ boiled egg/ for/ breakfast?  
.....?
3. Everyone/ enjoy/ concert/ last night?  
.....?
4. When/ you/ start/ working/ as/ officer/ in/ this company?  
.....?
5. How much/ money/ you/ spend/ on/ your/ last/ holiday?  
.....?
6. What time/ sun/ often/ rise/ in/ summer?  
.....?

7. You/ like/ cup/ of/ tea?  
.....?
8. Train/ leave/ early/ this morning?  
.....?
9. Who/ play/ guitar/ upstairs?  
.....?
10. Who/ tallest/ person/ in/ your/ class?  
.....?

**Bài 13: Khoanh vào đáp án đúng.**

**Elephants need help**

The elephant is (1) \_\_\_\_\_ unique cultural symbol of Tay Nguyen and Dak lak is considered the land of (2) \_\_\_\_\_ elephants in Vietnam. In the past, Tay Nguyen used to have large (3) \_\_\_\_\_ of elephants living in the mountains. They helped (4) \_\_\_\_\_ locals and they lived in harmony with people. However, the elephants in Tay Nguyen are in (5) \_\_\_\_\_ now. In recent years, climate changes have decreased the area of natural forests. Illegal deforestation has also threaten the elephants. Besides, illegal hunting for tusks, bones and tail hair has killed many of (6) \_\_\_\_\_ animals, (7) \_\_\_\_\_ can we protect the elephants? It is important that both the authorities and the local people joined hands to save the elephants from (8) \_\_\_\_\_.

1. A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. 0
2. A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. 0
3. A. shoals              B. schools              C. herds                      D. flocks
4. A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. 0
5. A. safe                      B. guard                      C. danger                      D. protection
6. A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. 0
7. A. How                      B. What                      C. Who                      D. Why
8. A. extinction B. protection C. destruction D. conservation

**Bài 14: Đọc bài đọc dưới đây và trả lời câu hỏi.**

**NGOC LU BRONZE DRUM**

Dong Son bronze drums are very famous for its cultural value. They are often used as a musical instrument in festivals and rituals. Of about 200 drums discovered, Ngoc Lu bronze drum is considered the most beautiful drum of the Dong Son culture ever found in Vietnam. It is now preserved at the National Museum of Vietnam History in Hanoi.

This drum has a large size and an ancient look with many decorative patterns. These patterns include a multi-ray star (symbolizing the shining sun) and in between the star rays are designs of stylized peacock feathers. Bands of geometrical patterns with small dots surround the star. The band of human figures presents two people pounding rice, some other standing or sitting inside the house, some beating the drum and many others dancing. In between those human patterns are the curved-roof stilted house, bronze drum, bronze bells, weapons, musical instruments and so on. The bands of animal figures include short –bill birds, the long –bill birds and deer.

The Ngoc Lu bronze drum is the most typical one in the bronze drum system of Vietnam, and at the same time it symbolizes the brilliant peak of the Dong Son culture. The drum represents the scientific knowledge and the artistic talent and mind of the ancient Viet.

1. What are Dong Son bronze drums famous for?  
.....
2. Which bronze drum is considered the most beautiful drum of the Dong Son culture?  
.....
3. Where is the Ngoc Lu bronze drum preserved now?  
.....
4. What decorative patterns are in between the star rays?  
.....
5. What does the band of animal figures include?  
.....



6. What does the Ngoc Lu bronze drum symbolize?

.....

### TEST 1 UNIT 3

#### I. Choose the word whose main stress is placed differently from the others.

- |                |               |               |                |
|----------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. notice   | B. surface    | C. contact    | D. effect      |
| 2. A. humid    | B. airmail    | C. discuss    | D. pancake     |
| 3. A. area     | B. comfort    | C. market     | D. concern     |
| 4. A. customer | B. delicious  | C. grocery    | D. resident    |
| 5. A. organize | B. discussion | C. restaurant | D. neighbor    |
| 6. A. frying   | B. towel      | C. socket     | D. include     |
| 7. A. chemical | B. precaution | C. electric   | D. destruction |
| 8. A. remember | B. dangerous  | C. vegetable  | D. opposite    |

#### II. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently the others.

- |                           |                                            |                     |                    |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>t</u> asty       | B. m <u>a</u> ll                           | C. st <u>a</u> dium | D. ch <u>a</u> nge |
| 2. A. <u>g</u> rocery     | B. m <u>o</u> nth                          | C. c <u>o</u> mfort | D. m <u>o</u> ney  |
| 3. A. <u>j</u> ust        | B. s <u>u</u> mm <u>e</u> r                | C. m <u>u</u> ch    | D. <u>r</u> uler   |
| 4. A. <u>a</u> round      | B. d <u>e</u> lic <u>i</u> ous             | C. <u>h</u> ouse    | D. <u>g</u> round  |
| 5. A. ex <u>h</u> ibition | B. n <u>e</u> igh <u>b</u> or <u>h</u> ood | C. <u>h</u> ot      | D. <u>h</u> umid   |

#### III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

- Children \_\_\_\_\_ drink milk every day. - It's good for them.  
A. must                      B. ought                      C. don't have to                      D. must not
- I think Angela \_\_\_\_\_ to buy that coat, it's really lovely.  
A. must                      B. ought                      C. should                      D. have
- We'll go swimming today \_\_\_\_\_ it's hot.  
A. so                      B. because                      C. so that                      D. then
- Let me \_\_\_\_\_ your bag.  
A. carry                      B. to carry                      C. to carrying                      D. carrying
- It'll take me an hour to do the household \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. work                      B. chores                      C. job                      D. exercises
- The Gong Festival is held \_\_\_\_\_ in the Central Highlands.  
A. year                      B. which                      C. annual                      D. annually
- \_\_\_\_\_ does Hoa Ban Festival take place? - In Lai Chau.  
A. What                      B. Where                      C. When                      D. How
- It is typical of the cultural life of \_\_\_\_\_ Thai people.  
A. some                      B. a                      C. the                      D. Ø
- \_\_\_\_\_ do the cattle provide for the nomads? - Dairy products, meat, and clothing.,  
A. What                      B. Where                      C. Why                      D. How
- During the festival, they fly many \_\_\_\_\_ kites in different shapes and sizes.  
A. colour                      B. colourless                      C. colourful                      D. colouring
- An old woman was \_\_\_\_\_ the goats up the mountainside.  
A. riding                      B. taking                      C. herding                      D. running
- \_\_\_\_\_ is the festival celebrated? - Every year.  
A. When                      B. How often                      C. How                      D. What
- We are looking for \_\_\_\_\_ place to spend \_\_\_\_\_ night.  
A. the-the                      B. a-the                      C. a-a                      D. the-a
- Please turn off \_\_\_\_\_ lights when you leave \_\_\_\_\_ room.  
A. the-the                      B. a-a                      C. the-a                      D. a-the
- We are looking for people with \_\_\_\_\_ experience.  
A. the                      B. a                      C. an                      D. Ø
- Would you pass me \_\_\_\_\_ salt, please?  
A. a                      B. the                      C. an                      D. Ø
- Can you show me \_\_\_\_\_ way to \_\_\_\_\_ station?  
A. the - the                      B. a - a                      C. the - a                      D. a - the
- She has read \_\_\_\_\_ interesting book.

- A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. Ø
19. You'll get \_\_\_\_\_ shock if you touch \_\_\_\_\_ live wire with that screwdriver.  
A. an – the              B. Ø – the              C. a – a              D. an – the
20. Mr. Smith is \_\_\_\_\_ old customer and \_\_\_\_\_ honest man.  
A. an – the              B. the – an              C. an – an              D. the – the
21. \_\_\_\_\_ youngest boy has just started going to \_\_\_\_\_ school.  
A. A – Ø              B. Ø – the              C. an – Ø              D. The – Ø
22. Do you go to \_\_\_\_\_ prison to visit him?  
A. the              B. a              C. Ø              D. an
23. \_\_\_\_\_ eldest boy is at \_\_\_\_\_ college.  
A. a – the              B. The – Ø              C. Ø – a              D. an – x
24. Are you going away next week? - No, \_\_\_\_\_ week after next.  
A. an              B. a              C. the              D. Ø
25. Would you like to hear \_\_\_\_\_ story about \_\_\_\_\_ English scientist?  
A. an – the              B. the – the              C. a – the              D. a – an
26. There'll always be a conflict between \_\_\_\_\_ old and \_\_\_\_\_ young.  
A. the – the              B. an – a              C. an – the              D. the – a
27. There was \_\_\_\_\_ collision at \_\_\_\_\_ corner.  
A. the – a              B. an – the              C. a – the              D. the – the
28. My mother thinks that this is \_\_\_\_\_ expensive shop.  
A. the              B. an              C. a              D. Ø
29. Like many women, she loves \_\_\_\_\_ parties and \_\_\_\_\_ gifts.  
A. the – a              B. a – the              C. a – a              D. Ø – Ø
30. She works seven days \_\_\_\_\_ week.  
A. a              B. the              C. an              D. Ø

#### IV. Choose the correct answers.

- Is this *a person* / *the person* you told me about?
- This is *the only cinema* / *an only cinema* in the area.
- Philip has just bought *the Thames barge* / *a Thames barge*.
- I'm going to *the British Museum* / *British Museum* this afternoon.
- Are you going to *church* / *the church* on Sunday?
- Do you have *a milk jug* / *milk jug*?
- The Prime Minister* / *Prime Minister* will give a speech this afternoon.
- The computer* / *Computer* has already changed our lives dramatically.
- I haven't been to *an open-air theatre* / *open-air theatre* before.
- Here is *a thousand pounds* / *the a thousand pounds* I owe you.
- I was *under an impression* / *under the impression* that you had left.
- I have to go I'm in *a hurry* / *hurry*.
- I managed to sell the old painting *at a profit* / *at profit*.
- I think I prefer the other restaurant *on the whole* / *on whole*.
- How many hours do you work, *on average* / *on the average*, every week?
- I was *in pain* / *in a pain* after I twist my ankle.
- Jack recovered from his accident and is now *out of danger* / *out of the danger*.
- Excuse me, but you're in the way / in a way.
- Sue felt seasick on *the cross- channel ferry* / *a cross- channel ferry*.
- The burglar hit me on *my back of the neck* / *the back of my neck*.

#### V. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.

- Nga eats more \_\_\_\_\_ than Tung does because she likes fast food. (**healthy**)
- Viet Nam is a \_\_\_\_\_ country with different peoples, religions and traditions. (**cultural**)
- Most of the Central Highlands is \_\_\_\_\_. (**mountain**)
- The \_\_\_\_\_ houses of many ethnic groups are used to worship the ancestors. (**commune**)
- To become friendlier, you should \_\_\_\_\_ with your workmates. (**socialisation**)
- Paul used to be \_\_\_\_\_ to soft drinks, but now he seldom drinks them. (**addiction**)
- Like my aunt, I want to become a professional dog \_\_\_\_\_. (**train**)
- I am \_\_\_\_\_ of her hometown with a lot of paddy fields. (**envy**)

9. The cattle are herded to a new pasture by the \_\_\_\_\_. (nomadic)

10. Do villagers today dress \_\_\_\_\_ as in the past? (tradition)

**V. Read the following passage and choose the item (A, B, C or D) that best answers each of the questions about it.**

Hi! My name is John. I live in Liverpool. Liverpool is a large city in the north of England. I live with my parents, my two brothers and my sister. We live in a large house.

In our house, there is a big kitchen, a dining room, a large living room, and a toilet. There is also a separate room for our washing machine and freezer. Upstairs there are five bedrooms, two bathrooms, and another toilet. Outside, there is a large garden. There are two garages.

1. Where does John live?

- A. In England      B. In Wales      C. In Scotland      D. In France

2. How many people are there in John's family?

- A. 4      B. 5      C. 6      D. 7

3. How many rooms are there in John's house?

- A. 10      B. 11      C. 13      D. 14

4. Dining room is the room in a house where you \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. usually relax in comfortable chairs      B. eat meals  
C. cook food and wash dishes      D. wash your body

5. Which of the following is not true?

- A. John's family live in a large house.  
B. John's house is big but doesn't have any gardens.  
C. The kitchen in John's house is big.  
D. John's house has two garages.

**VI. Choose the word (A, B, C, or D) that best fits each of the blank spaces.**

Dear Grandma and Grandpa,

Hi! How are you? We're (1) \_\_\_\_\_.

Well, we finally moved! This is a picture (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the living room of our new house. It's really huge. There are lots of (3) \_\_\_\_\_ so it's very sunny. (4) \_\_\_\_\_, we don't have (5) \_\_\_\_\_ yet. We (6) \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful couch actually, a sofa bed. We want (7) \_\_\_\_\_ an ultra-modern table to put (8) \_\_\_\_\_ of it. Please visit soon after we get our new couch.

Love,

Sharon and Alex

- |                      |                    |                    |                    |
|----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. fine           | B. good            | C. well            | D. all are correct |
| 2. A. on             | B. with            | C. about           | D. of              |
| 3. A. rooms          | B. windows         | C. couches         | D. cushions        |
| 4. A. Of course      | B. For example     | C. Because         | D. Soon            |
| 5. A. much furniture | B. many furnitures | C. much furnitures | D. many furniture  |
| 6. A. buy            | B. buys            | C. are buying      | D. bought          |
| 7. A. get            | B. getting         | C. to get          | D. to getting      |
| 8. A. beside         | B. behind          | C. in front        | D. next            |

### TEST 2 (UNIT 3)

**I. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.**

1. The Gong Festival is held \_\_\_\_ in the Central Highlands.

- A. year      B. yearly      C. annual      D. annually

2. \_\_\_\_\_ does Hoa Ban Festival take place? – In Lai Chau.

- A. What      B. Where      C. When      D. How

3. It is typical of the cultural life of \_\_\_\_\_ Thai people.

- A. some      B. a      C. the      D. Ø

4. \_\_\_\_\_ do the cattle provide for the nomads? – Dairy products, meat and clothing.

- A. What      B. Where      C. Why      D. How

5. The crops \_\_\_\_\_ on the weather.

- A. depend heavy      B. depend heavily      C. affect heavy      D. affect heavily

6. Mai studies Maths a little bit \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. bad      B. badly      C. good      D. smartly

7. During the festival, they fly many \_\_\_\_\_ kites in different shapes and sizes.

- A.colour                      B.colourless                      C.colourful                      D.colouring
8. An old woman was \_\_\_\_\_ the goats up the mountainside.  
A.riding                      B.taking                      C.herding                      D.running
9. \_\_\_\_\_ is the festival celebrated? – Every year.  
A.When                      B.How often                      C.How                      D.What
10. There are no high buildings to block \_\_\_\_\_ in our village.  
A.view                      B.a view                      C.some view                      D.the view

**II. Fill in each blank of the passage with the correct word/phrase from the box.**

|                 |                          |                       |                     |
|-----------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| <i>a tour</i>   | <i>ethnic groups</i>     | <i>little bridges</i> | <i>information</i>  |
| <i>research</i> | <i>cultural heritage</i> | <i>stilt house</i>    | <i>display area</i> |

Vietnam Museum of Ethnology in Ha Noi offers an insight into the 54 different ethnic groups of Viet Nam in an effort to preserve (1)\_\_\_\_\_.

The museum is full of (2)\_\_\_\_\_ about traditional Vietnamese ways of life of all the Vietnamese(3)\_\_\_\_\_.

The display hall shows everyday objects representing each ethnic group, a (4)\_\_\_\_\_ center, a library and an auditorium. Its indoor exhibition area provides you (5)\_\_\_\_\_ which includes the Viet, Muong, Tay , Thai, H'Mong, Yao, Khmer, Cham, and Hoa ethnic groups.

The outdoor (6)\_\_\_\_\_ presents a variety of Vietnamese homes including a Tay(7)\_\_\_\_\_ and a Viet house, each separated by a small stream, and reached (8)\_\_\_\_\_. The museum is suitable for children, and all documents and signs are translated into English and French.

**III. Use the correct form of the words in brackets to finish the sentences.**

- Terraced rice fields in Sa Pa are slopes claimed for cultivation in hilly or \_\_\_\_\_ areas. (mountain)
- For the Muong, rice is also the main \_\_\_\_\_ crop. (agriculture)
- The Muong call their \_\_\_\_\_ calendar"sach doi", which is made from 12 bamboo sticks that represent the 12 months. (tradition)
- Viet Nam is a country of tremendous \_\_\_\_\_ with 54 ethnic groups. (diverse)
- The ethnic minority groups in Viet Nam have been living in co-existence. (peace)

**IV. Complete the passage with the words given in the box.**

|               |            |                 |                |                |
|---------------|------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|
| <i>ethnic</i> | <i>for</i> | <i>villages</i> | <i>dress</i>   | <i>valleys</i> |
| <i>home</i>   | <i>at</i>  | <i>with</i>     | <i>provide</i> | <i>their</i>   |

The villages surrounding Sa Pa are (1)\_\_\_\_\_ to several of Vietnam's 54 ethnic minority groups, each with their own distinctive (2)\_\_\_\_\_, customs and dialects. These tribes can all be seen (3)\_\_\_\_\_ the weekend market in Sa Pa town to trade (4)\_\_\_\_\_ one another. Apart from its fascinating (5)\_\_\_\_\_ diversity, Sa Pa is also famous (6)\_\_\_\_\_ its trekking. With Vietnam's highest peak. Mt. Fansipan (3,143m) only 9km away the (7)\_\_\_\_\_ and mountain (8)\_\_\_\_\_ the perfect backdrop for some great treks. Some of the (9)\_\_\_\_\_ now have local stays where you can stay overnight with a family in (10)\_\_\_\_\_ traditional home.

**V. Read the passage, and make questions for the underlined words of the following answers.**

In 2006, the house of a local family in Dong Van District, Ha Giang Province was chosen for the background of the film "The Story of Pao". From distance, the house looks beautiful as a painting. Bushes of wild but beautiful flowers in blossom on the right and an old leaning cherry blossom tree at the gate create a romantic scene for the house. The film is about the life of a Hmong girl named Pao. She was raised by her stepmother because her real mother left her when she was little. One day, her stepmother died in an accident, and she began to look for her birth mother.

- \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
The house was chosen for the background of the film in 2006.
- \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
The house is in Dong Van District, Ha Giang Province.
- \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
The film is about the life of a Hmong girl named Pao.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 She was raised by her stepmother because her real mother left her when she was little.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 She began to look for her birth mother when her stepmother died in an accident.

**VI. Make questions for the underlined words for these answers.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 The Ha Nhi ethnic group has about 12,500 inhabitants.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 They live in the provinces of Lai Chau and Lao Cai.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 The Ha Nhi family worship their ancestors.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 They live on rice cultivation of burnt-over land or terraced fields.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 They use ploughs and harrows pulled by oxen and buffaloes to work in the fields.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 The gardens are often close to their houses.

**VII. Choose the word or the phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.**

**Communal House (Rong House)**

The *Rong* House can only be (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in villages to the north of the Central Highlands, especially in Gia Lai and Kon Tum provinces. It is a large, imposing, beautifully decorated stilt house built (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the middle of the village. It is where community activities (3) \_\_\_\_\_, meetings, wedding ceremonies, or praying ceremonies. It is also the place for reception of guests. The *Rong* House of each ethnic group has its own architectural style, design and decor. Yet there are shared (4) \_\_\_\_\_. In the village, it is often (5) \_\_\_\_\_ house roofed with yellow-dried thatch leaves and having 8 big wood columns. The rafters are decorated with patterns of bright colours, depicting religious scenes, legendary stories about ancient heroes, stylized animals, and other familiar things of the village life. The most distinction of the decor of the *Rong* house is the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ of the brilliant God of Sun. The *Rong* House is a (7) \_\_\_\_\_ of the culture of Central Highlanders, an age-old and stable culture. The bigger the house, the wealthier the village is. It is a (8) \_\_\_\_\_ of the whole village.

- |                  |             |                |             |
|------------------|-------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. A. find       | B. found    | C. to find     | D. finding  |
| 2. A. on         | B. at       | C. in          | D. under    |
| 3. A. take place | B. take on  | C. happens     | D. occurs   |
| 4. A. designs    | B. cultures | C. customs     | D. features |
| 5. A. a big      | B. a bigger | C. the biggest | D. biggest  |
| 6. A. painting   | B. photo    | C. image       | D. portrait |
| 7. A. signal     | B. symbol   | C. sign        | D. scene    |
| 8. A. design     | B. respect  | C. proud       | D. pride    |

**VIII. Read the passage, and make questions for the underlined words of the following answers.**

**Duong Lam: An ancient Vietnamese village**

Duong Lam Village is located in Duong Lam Commune at a 45 km distance from Ha Noi. It is the birthplace of two kings in the history of Vietnam, Phung Hung (or Bo Cai Dai Vuong) and Ngo Quyen, who opened up the long-term self-control and independence period of Viet Nam after Bach Dang Victory in the year 938.

All houses, gates, village gates and wells are built of laterite creating an architectural complex, a unique village that is typical for villages in the midlands in the North of Vietnam.

At present, there are still nearly old 200 houses and many other historical monuments such as Phung Hung Temple, Ngo Quyen Tomb, Mong Phu Communal House. Ho Gam Hill at which Phung Hung killed tigers to rescue villagers and the temple at which the diplomat Giang Van Minh is worshiped.

1. Where is Duong Lam Village? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Who were the two kings whose birthplace is Duong Lam Village? \_\_\_\_\_
3. What is Duong Lam typical for? \_\_\_\_\_

4. How many old houses are there in Duong Lam?

5. What are the famous historical monuments there?

**IX. Write full sentences about the Cham ethnic group, using the words and phrases given.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The Cham ethnic group/ a population/ about 100,00.

2. They/ live/ mostly/ the coast/ between NinhThuan/ BinhThuan Provinces/ or/ the Cambodian border/ around Chau Doc

3. The Cham/ a tradition/ wet rice cultivation.

4. Handicrafts/ fairly well-developed/ especially silkworm textiles/ handmade pottery wares.

5. Both men/ women/ wear/ long one-piece sarongs/ cloth wrappers.

6. Main colour/ their daily dress/ cotton white.

7. Chief means/ transporting goods/ farm produce/ back-basket.

8. Most important festival/ called *Bon Kate*/ held/ near the Cham towers/ the tenth month/ the Lunar year.

**TEST 3 UNIT 3**

**I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.**

- |                        |                       |                   |                    |
|------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. a. <u>school</u>    | b. <u>skull</u>       | c. <u>scenery</u> | d. <u>sky</u>      |
| 2. a. <u>visited</u>   | b. <u>recommended</u> | c. <u>wanted</u>  | d. <u>hoped</u>    |
| 3. a. <u>important</u> | b. <u>boring</u>      | c. <u>minor</u>   | d. <u>northern</u> |
| 4. a. <u>community</u> | b. <u>custom</u>      | c. <u>costume</u> | d. <u>museum</u>   |
| 5. a. <u>ethnic</u>    | b. <u>gather</u>      | c. <u>though</u>  | d. <u>clothing</u> |

**II. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.**

- The Dao in the Sapa area is famous \_\_\_\_\_ its "love market."  
a. for                      b. in                      c. with                      d. to
- The Thai live \_\_\_\_\_ farming on their burnt-over land and wet-rice terraced fields.  
a. in                      b. on                      c. out                      d. up
- The \_\_\_\_\_ house is a place where villagers gather for festivals and rituals.  
a. terraced                      b. splendid                      c. communal                      d. thatched
- There were lots of interesting folk games, \_\_\_\_\_ Kenny stayed a little longer to join them.



- a. but                      b. because                      c. however                      d. so
5. '\_\_\_\_\_ dress in red and black costume?' 'The Dao'
- a. What                      b. Which                      c. Who                      d. When
6. What colour is \_\_\_\_\_ symbol of good luck for the Hoa?
- a. a                      b. an                      c. -                      d. some
7. \_\_\_\_\_ in terraced fields is the main economic activity of ethnic people in Sapa.
- a. Fishing                      b. Rice cultivation                      c. Hunting                      d. Gathering
8. \_\_\_\_\_ ethnic Khmer live in \_\_\_\_\_ Mekong Delta of Vietnam.
- a. The / -                      b. The / a                      c. A / the                      d. The / the
9. The Vietnam Museum of Ethnology \_\_\_\_\_ by the architect Ha Duc Linh, a member of the Tay ethnic group.
- a. designed                      b. has designed                      c. was designed                      d. was designing
10. 'I have just taken an elephant ride in Buon Don.' '\_\_\_\_\_ How interesting!'
- a. Certainly.                      b. Really?                      c. Terrible.                      d. Exactly.

### III. Complete the sentences with the words or phrases from the box.

|                 |         |              |               |                   |
|-----------------|---------|--------------|---------------|-------------------|
| terraced fields | costume | stilt houses | heritage site | ethnic minorities |
| unique          | diverse | speciality   | ornaments     | folk dances       |

- The Nung mostly live in \_\_\_\_\_ though they also live in earthen houses.
- Five-colour sticky rice is well-known as a \_\_\_\_\_ of the north-western region of Vietnam.
- The goods in the open-air market are \_\_\_\_\_. You can find almost everything there.
- Thai cloth is well-known for being \_\_\_\_\_, colourful and strong.
- Xoe and Sap* are \_\_\_\_\_ of Thai ethnic minority people.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ of the Nung is not as colorful as that of other ethnic groups.
- My Son sanctuary has been recognized by UNESCO as a world \_\_\_\_\_.
- Thai women retain their traditional clothes including short vests, long black skirts, scarves, and \_\_\_\_\_.
- Sa Pa is famous for the \_\_\_\_\_ located in the mountainous area.
- \_\_\_\_\_ make up between 10 to 15 percent of the population in Vietnam.

### IV. Complete each sentence with a suitable question word.

- \_\_\_\_\_ ethnic group has larger population, Cho Ro or Chu Ru? – Cho Ro.
- \_\_\_\_\_ groups of languages do all ethnic groups speak? – Eight groups.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is the biggest house in the village? – It's the communal house.
- \_\_\_\_\_ arts are displayed in a museum in Da Nang city? – The Cham's.
- \_\_\_\_\_ do the San Diu mainly live? – In Quang Ninh province.
- \_\_\_\_\_ do the Thai hold ceremonies to worship their ancestors? – Every year.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is the village chief of the Phu La? – The oldest man.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is it from here, to the communal house? – Just about one kilometre.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is "khan pieu"? – It's a shawl with colorful embroidery.
- \_\_\_\_\_ do they cook five coloured sticky rice? – On special occasions.

### V. Change each sentence into a question using the question words in brackets.

- The girl with a shawl on her head is a member of the Thai. (who)
- The Khmer have three main festivals in a year. (how many)
- Odu is the smallest ethnic group in Vietnam. (which)
- Ok Om Bok Festival is the biggest festival of Khmer people. (what)
- We can find terraced fields in the northern mountainous regions. (where)
- Bom Bo village is about 200 kilometres from Ho Chi Minh city. (how far)
- They built their houses on stilts to prevent flooding from tides or storms. (why)



8. The population of the Tay ethnic group is about 1.7 million. (what)
9. The Tay have lived in Vietnam for thousands of years. (how long)
10. The M'Nong mainly live in Dak Lak province. (where)

**VI. Underline the correct option. This may include a space (–) for zero article.**

1. Vietnam is *a/an/ the* multiethnic country with 54 ethnic groups.
2. The Viet (Kinh) people account for 87% of *a / the / –* country's population.
3. Chaul Chnam Thmey is *a/ an/ the* celebration of New Year by Khmers.
4. Folk singing of the Bru-Van Kieu is popular, particularly cha chap and sim, *the / a / an* alternating chant between young men and women.
5. Ancestor worship is *the / a / –* most important religious activity among the Bru-Van Kieu.
6. The La Ha grow *the/ – /a* cotton but do not weave.
7. The Rong house of the Xo Dang is *a / an / the* big stilt house with a high roof which looks like *a/an/ the* axe.
8. The young Co Ho women play *an / a / the* active role in marriage.
9. The Ba Na are one of *the / a / an* oldest ethnic minority groups living in *a / – / the* Central Highlands.
10. *The / A / –* right of inheritance in Ede families is only for *the / – / a* daughters.
11. Y Phon lives in the city, but his family still live in *a / the / –* small village in *a / – / the* mountains.
12. *A / The / –* M'Nong live in houses built on *the / – /a* stilts or level with *a/ – /the* ground.

**VII. Complete the sentence with the correct form of the words in brackets.**

1. Many ethnic groups managed to live together \_\_\_\_\_. (peace)
2. How often is the Gong Festival \_\_\_\_\_? (celebrate)
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ of people in Vietnam belong to the Kinh people. (major)
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ house is the place where village ceremonies and festivals take place. (commune)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ is a traditional folk art of the Miao people. (embroider)
6. Five-coloured sticky rice is a traditional \_\_\_\_\_ of Tay people. (special)
7. H'mong people live in the northern \_\_\_\_\_ region of Vietnam. (mountain)
8. The Tai are known for their \_\_\_\_\_ garments and their houses on stilts. (weave)
9. The \_\_\_\_\_ you can find in Sapa include the Hmong, Dao, and Tay. (ethnic)
10. Muong people are \_\_\_\_\_ more closely related to the Tai people. (culture)

**VIII. Complete each sentence with an appropriate preposition.**

1. Nick is curious \_\_\_\_\_ the ethnic minority groups in Vietnam.
2. The Viet account \_\_\_\_\_ about 86% of Vietnam's population.
3. The M'Nong live in houses built \_\_\_\_\_ stilts.
4. The Hmong live mostly \_\_\_\_\_ the mountainous regions \_\_\_\_\_ the north.
5. The M'Nong in Ban Don are well known \_\_\_\_\_ their elephant hunting and domestication.
6. Many ethnic minority students are studying \_\_\_\_\_ boarding schools.
7. The Thai have a population \_\_\_\_\_ about one and a half million people.
8. Tay language belongs \_\_\_\_\_ the Tay-Thai language group.
9. The communal house is used \_\_\_\_\_ village meetings and festivities.
10. The *chapi* is made \_\_\_\_\_ a section of an old bamboo.

**IX. Supply the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.**

1. The first Brau \_\_\_\_\_ (come) to Vietnam about a century ago.
2. The majority of people in Vietnam \_\_\_\_\_ (belong) to the Kinh ethnic group.
3. Hoa Ban festival \_\_\_\_\_ (start) on March 17<sup>th</sup> and \_\_\_\_\_ (end) on March 19<sup>th</sup>.
4. Listen! \_\_\_\_\_ those ethnic girls \_\_\_\_\_ (speak) the Ede language?
5. So far Nick \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) a lot about the ethnic minorities in Vietnam.
6. We \_\_\_\_\_ (be) to Buon Me Thuot city twice, but we \_\_\_\_\_ (never/ visit) Don Village.
7. In the future, the local government \_\_\_\_\_ (organize) more activities to promote the culture of ethnic groups.
8. These stilt houses \_\_\_\_\_ (build) over 50 years ago by the Tay people.

9. Tourists to Don Village enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ (ride) elephants around the hamlet to the forest.
10. The elephants help local people \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in the fields, and carry goods or construction materials.

**XI. Read the text carefully, then answer the questions.**

Vietnam is a multiethnic country with 54 ethnic groups. The Viet (Kinh) people account for 87% of the country's population and mainly inhabit the Red River delta, the central coastal delta, the Mekong delta and major cities. The other 53 ethnic minority groups, totaling over 8 million people, are scattered over mountain areas spreading from the North to the South. Among ethnic minorities, the most populated are Tay, Thai, Muong, Hoa, Khmer, Nung... with a population of around 1 million each; while the least populated are Bru, Roman, Odu with several hundred people each.

The main economic activity of most ethnic peoples is wet rice cultivation. A number of ethnic minorities had mastered some farming techniques. They grew rice plants in swamped paddy fields and carried out irrigation. Others go hunting, fishing, collecting and live a semi-nomadic life. Each group has its own culture that is diverse and special. Beliefs and religions of the Vietnamese ethnic minority groups are also disparate from each other.

1. How many ethnic groups are there in Vietnam?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Where do the Kinh people mostly live?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. What is the population of the Tay?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Which ethnic groups have the smallest population?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. What do most ethnic peoples mainly live on?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Do the ethnic minority groups have the same culture, religion and belief?  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. How is the culture of each ethnic group?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**XII. Fill in each gap with a word from the box.**

including    display    ethnic    which    diversity    viewed    throughout    home

Vietnam Museum of Ethnology in Hanoi offers an insight into the 54 different (1)\_\_\_\_\_ groups of Vietnam in an effort to preserve cultural heritage and promote socio-cultural (2)\_\_\_\_\_ within the country.

The museum has over 15,000 artefacts (3)\_\_\_\_\_ photographs and other multi-media such as audiotapes. Its indoor exhibition space can be (4)\_\_\_\_\_ via a virtual tour (5)\_\_\_\_\_ includes the Viet, Muong, Tho, Chut, Tay, Thai, Ka Dai, H'Mong-Dao, Tang, San Dui, Ngai, Mon-Khmer, Nam-Dao, Cham, Hoa and Khmer ethnic groups. There are priceless antiques on (6)\_\_\_\_\_ alongside everyday objects such as pipes, baskets and knives.

The outdoor area presents a range of traditional (7)\_\_\_\_\_ including a stilt house and a Viet house. The museum is suitable for children, and all documents and display signs (8)\_\_\_\_\_ have been translated into French and English.

**II. Read the text carefully, then do the tasks below.**

The Muong are among the ethnic minority groups that have big populations in Vietnam. The Muong share an estimate of 1.3 million people from their six sub-groups, such as Mol, Mual, Moi, Moi Bi, Au Ta and Ao Ta. They are largely concentrated in the provinces of Hoa Binh and Thanh Hoa particularly in mountainous districts. Their language belongs to the Viet-Muong group and they hold many ceremonies year round.

The Muong have practiced farming for a long time and wet rice is their main food staple. Most of their family's other income is generated through the exploitation of forest products including mushrooms, dried fungus, ammonium, and sticklac. The men are known for basketry as women are skilled in silk spinning and loom weaving.

The Muong have diverse folk arts including folk songs and poems, sorcerer's worshiping songs, tales, proverbs, lullabies, and riddle songs. The gong is the most popular musical instrument along with the flute,

the two-string violin, the drum, and the panpipe.

**A. Decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F).**

1. The Muong is one of the largest ethnic minorities in Vietnam.
2. The Muong are also called Mol, Mual, Moi, Mol Bi, Au Ta and Ao Ta.
3. The Muong don't have their own language, so they speak Vietnamese.
4. The Muong live mainly on forest products, such as mushrooms and dried fungus.
5. Muong women are very good at making baskets and loom weaving.
6. The Muong have a rich treasure of folk arts.

**B. Answer the questions.**

1. What is the population of the Muong?

2. Where do the Muong mostly live?

3. What is the main food product of the Muong?

4. What are musical instruments of the Muong?

**XIII. Reorder the words to make sentences.**

1. country/ with/ Vietnam/ 54/ is/ multiethnic/ a/ groups/ ethnic.
2. minorities/ make/ population/ Ethnic/ up/ 15 percent/ of/ the/ of/ about/ Vietnam 3
3. Most/ live/ of/ ethnic/ in/ minorities/ the/ the/ areas/ in/ north/ the/ mountainous.
4. Vietnam/ Tay/ second/ the/ largest/ are/ the/ ethnic/ in/ group.
5. are/ The/ known/ Nung/ including/ music and poetry/ for/ folk-art/ richness/ traditions/ their/ of.
6. people/ a/ The/ Dao/ language/ speak/ Hmong-Dao/ of/ language system.
7. not/ as/ The/ Nung/ costume/ is/ colourful/ of/ the/ as/ that/ of/ ethnic/ other/ groups.
8. The/ Ede/ built/ on/ live/ in/ stilts/ in/ wooden/ villages/ longhouses/ as/ buon/ known.

**TEST YOURSELF 1**

**I. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.**

- |                  |              |              |               |
|------------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. A. harmful    | B. slowly    | C. cloudy    | D. unique     |
| 2. A. worship    | B. belong    | C. enjoy     | D. behave     |
| 3. A. alternate  | B. entertain | C. symbolize | D. cultivate  |
| 4. A. heritage   | B. museum    | C. decorate  | D. blackberry |
| 5. A. minorities | B. populated | C. activity  | D. experience |

**II. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.**

6. Yoga help us learn \_\_\_\_\_ to co-ordinate breathing and movement.  
A. what      B. when      C. why      D. how
7. Teenagers enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ to music and \_\_\_\_\_ out with friends.  
A. listen - hang      B. to listen - to hang      C. listening - hang      D. listening - hanging
8. \_\_\_\_\_ should children do yoga too?  
A. Why      B. When      C. What      D. How
9. Don't worry. It is \_\_\_\_\_ to travel to that village even at night.  
A. safe      B. unsafe      C. difficult      D. inconvenient
10. Life in a small town is \_\_\_\_\_ than that in a big city.  
A. peaceful      B. much peaceful      C. less peaceful      D. much more peaceful
11. The boys often help their parents to \_\_\_\_\_ water from the village well.  
A. gather      B. collect      C. give      D. find

12. In the Central Highlands, the biggest and tallest house in the village is the \_\_\_\_\_ house.

A. communication    B. community    C. communal    D. commune

13. The Viet people have many \_\_\_\_\_ customs and crafts.

A. tradition    B. traditional    C. culture    D. customary

14. \_\_\_\_\_ month is the Hoa Ban Festival of the Thai people held in?

A. When    B. Which    C. How many    D. How often

15. The \_\_\_\_\_ on display in Da Nang Museum of Cham Sculpture are very interesting.

A. items    B. goods    C. products    D. shows

**III. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the word in brackets.**

1. Some regions in Central Highlands in Viet Nam are not \_\_\_\_\_. (populate)

2. He spoke \_\_\_\_\_ about the life in the countryside in Viet Nam. (optimistic)

3. All of us can realize the \_\_\_\_\_ atmosphere in the countryside life. (peace)

4. Some of the \_\_\_\_\_ have lived here all their lives. (village)

5. Having to wait for ten minutes was a minor \_\_\_\_\_. (convenient)

**IV. Complete each blank in the following passage with the correct word/phrase from the box.**

|               |               |               |              |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| <i>use</i>    | <i>design</i> | <i>colors</i> | <i>slope</i> |
| <i>stream</i> | <i>tribe</i>  | <i>takes</i>  | <i>image</i> |

Cat Cat Village is located on the Muong Hoa Valley, this is the village of the Hmong hill (1) \_\_\_\_\_. It is not far from Sa Pa Town, about 3 km and it (2) \_\_\_\_\_ you 45 minutes to walk here. The village is on the (3) \_\_\_\_\_ of the hill and easy walking, rice and corn are grown here.

Visiting Cat Cat Village, we can have a chance to visit a big waterfall on the (4) \_\_\_\_\_ and the old Hydro-electric Power Station built by the French here.

We can also see the (5) \_\_\_\_\_ of young women sitting by looms with colourful pieces of brocade decorated with designs of flowers and birds. When these pieces of brocade are finished, they are dyed and embroidered with beautiful (6) \_\_\_\_\_. It is interesting that Hmong women (7) \_\_\_\_\_ plants and leaves to dye these brocade fabrics. And then they roll a round and smooth section of wood covered with wax on fabrics to polish them, making their (8) \_\_\_\_\_ durable.

**V. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank in the following passage.**

My village is about 50 kilometers from the city center. It is very (1) \_\_\_\_\_ place where people (2) \_\_\_\_\_ flowers and vegetables only. It is very famous for its pretty roses and picturesque scenes. The air is quite fresh, however the smell of the roses make people (3) \_\_\_\_\_ cool. In spring, my village looks (4) \_\_\_\_\_ a carpet with plenty of colors. Tourists come to visit it so often. Nowadays, with electricity, it doesn't take the villagers much time (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the roses.

1. A. beauty    B. beautiful    C. beautify    D. beautifully

2. A. plant    B. plants    C. grow up    D. grows up

3. A. feel    B. feeling    C. felt    D. to feel

4. A. as    B. like    C. alike    D. same

5. A. water    B. watering    C. to water    D. watered

**VI. Choose the word or the phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.**

I live in a small village called Northville. There are about 2000 people here. I love the village (1) \_\_\_\_\_. It is very quite and life is slow and easy. The village is always clean, people look (2) \_\_\_\_\_ it with great care. The air is always clean, too. People are much more friendly here than in a city because everyone (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the others, and if someone has a problem, there are always people who can help.

There are only a few things that I don't like about Northville. One thing is that we have not got many things to do in the evening; we haven't got (4) \_\_\_\_\_ cinemas and theaters. The other thing is that people always talk about (5) \_\_\_\_\_, and everyone knows what everyone is doing. But I still prefer village life in a big city.

1. A. so    B. although

C. because

D. but

2. A. for    B. at

C. up

D. after

3. A. knows    B. know

C. is knowing

D. knew

4. A. little    B. some

C. any

D. few

5. A. others    B. other

C. another

D. one another





- a. in                      b. off                      c. on                      d. to
2. Their family have moved to the city \_\_\_\_\_ 2001.  
a. horn                      b. for                      c. in                      d. since
3. The Kinh have the largest number of people, \_\_\_\_\_ for 86% of the population.  
a. holding                      b. taking                      c. accounting                      d. numbering
4. I'm tired of \_\_\_\_\_ in the city. It's too busy, noisy and dirty.  
a. live                      b. to live                      c. to be lived                      d. living
5. \_\_\_\_\_ drop that mobile phone and do your homework?  
a. Why don't you                      b. How about                      c. Would you mind                      d. When did you
6. The Hmong of Sa Pa are called Black Hmong \_\_\_\_\_ their mainly black clothing.  
a. because of                      b. in spite of                      c. in order to                      d. according to
7. People in rural areas live \_\_\_\_\_ than those in cities.  
a. simpler                      b. more simply                      c. more simple                      d. simpler
8. The highlands of northern Vietnam are home to the 1.5 million-strong Tay, \_\_\_\_\_ minority group.  
a. Vietnam's largest                      b. the Vietnam's largest  
c. a Vietnam's largest                      d. the largest Vietnam
9. \_\_\_\_\_ is the Nung's clothing? ~ Indigo.  
a. What                      b. Which group                      c. What colour                      d. Whose
10. 'I find it hard to build a toy car.' 'But \_\_\_\_\_'  
a. my pleasure                      b. it's my fault.  
c. it sounds great!                      d. it's right up your street!

**IV. Supply the correct tense or form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ ever/ take) a trip to the countryside? It's really interesting!
2. For many nomads, their cattle \_\_\_\_\_ (provide) meat, milk, and hides for their own use.
3. When I was a kid, I \_\_\_\_\_ (spend) hours gleaning rice from paddy fields.
4. Sa Pa's love market \_\_\_\_\_ (be) an unique aspect in the culture of the Mong and Dao ethnic groups for a long time.
5. Where is Jeanny? ~ She \_\_\_\_\_ (practise) the piano in the music room.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ (your family/ move) to the city in 2008?
7. Basketry, pottery and indigo cloth \_\_\_\_\_ (produce) by the Rhade for their own use.
8. I've got the tickets. Next week we \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) Hanoi.
9. Do you fancy \_\_\_\_\_ (come) on a day trip to my uncle's farm next Saturday?
10. Nomadic children learn \_\_\_\_\_ (herd) the cattle when they are small.

**V. Write the correct form of the words in brackets.**

1. His \_\_\_\_\_ to the Internet is taking over his life. (addict)
2. Who lives more happily, \_\_\_\_\_ or city dwellers? (nomadic)
3. Children in rural areas often travel to school \_\_\_\_\_ than those in big cities. (far)
4. Red River Delta is an agriculturally rich area and densely \_\_\_\_\_. (populate)
5. Dao and San Chay have \_\_\_\_\_ practised shifting cultivation. (tradition)
6. The Internet has already changed the way people \_\_\_\_\_. (social)
7. Thai women are very skilled \_\_\_\_\_ and produce beautiful embroidery. (weave)
8. Groups of boys and young girls perform traditional love songs in \_\_\_\_\_ that can last all night. (festival)

**VII. Read the passage and do the tasks below**

The Hmong, or Meo, who number about 800,000, are found in villages known as *giao* throughout the highlands of northern Vietnam. The Hmong migrated to Vietnam from the southern China at the beginning of the 19th century.

The Hmong minority group has been subdivided into branches classified by women's costume, dialect and customs. For example, the Hmong of Sa Pa are called Black Hmong because of their predominantly black clothing. The most colourful sub-group are the Flower Hmong, found in large numbers around Bac Ha in Lao Cai province, who wear bright-coloured clothes with embroidery.

Corn is the main staple of Hmong people, but rice is often grown on terraces watered with the aid of irrigation. Hemp is grown to be woven into textiles, and cotton is also cultivated in some villages. As skilled artisans, the Hmong produce a variety of items, including handwoven indigo-dyed cloth, paper, silver

jewellery, leather goods, baskets and embroidery. The Hmong have no written language. Their legends, songs, folklore and proverbs have been passed down from one generation to the next through the spoken word.

**A. Decide if the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

1. The Hmong in Vietnam have a population of 8 million people.
2. They immigrated from China approximately 300 years ago.
3. Black Hmong women wear black clothing.
4. Rice is the most important crop of Hmong people.
5. Hemp is cultivated for textile fiber.
6. The Hmong don't have their own language.

**B. Answer the questions.**

1. What Is the other name of the Hmong?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. When did the Hmong come to Vietnam?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Why are the Hmong of Sa Pa called Black Hmong?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Where do the Hmong grow rice?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. What are the products of the Hmong people?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. How have their legends, songs, folklore and proverbs been passed down?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**VIII. Write the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first one.**

1. Flying a kite in the countryside is very exciting.  
It's \_\_\_\_\_
2. I have done voluntary work for three years.  
I started \_\_\_\_\_
3. It took me two hours to walk to her village.  
I spent \_\_\_\_\_
4. Millions of tourists visit the Museum of Ethnology every year.  
The Museum of Ethnology \_\_\_\_\_
5. Jane makes crafts better than her sister.  
Jane's sister doesn't \_\_\_\_\_
6. Let's go to my uncle's farm at the weekend.  
Amy suggested \_\_\_\_\_

**UNIT 4: CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS**

**A. VOCABULARY**

1. accept (v) /ək'sept/: chấp nhận, nhận
2. break with (v) /breɪk wɪð/: không theo
3. clockwise (adv) /kɒkwaɪz/: theo chiều kim đồng hồ
4. compliment (n) /'kɒmplɪmənt/: lời khen
5. course (n) /kɔ:s/: món ăn
6. cutlery (n) /'kʌtləri/: bộ đồ ăn (gồm thìa, đĩa, dao)
7. filmstrip (n) /'fɪlmstri:p/: đoạn phim
8. host (n) /həʊst/: chủ nhà (nam)
9. hostess (n) /'həʊstəs/: chủ nhà (nữ)
10. generation (n) /,dʒenə'reɪʃn/: thế hệ
11. offspring (n) /'ɒfsprɪŋ/: con cái
12. oblige (v) /ə'blaɪdʒ/: bắt buộc
13. palm (n) /pɑ:m/: lòng bàn tay
14. pass down (v) /pɑ:s daʊn/: truyền cho
15. prong (n) /prɒŋ/: đầu đĩa (phần có răng)
16. reflect (v) /rɪ'flekt/: phản ánh



17. sharp (adv) /ʃɑ:p/: chính xác, đúng
18. sense of belonging (n) /sens əv bi'lonɪŋ/: cảm giác thân thuộc
19. social (adj) /'səʊʃl/: thuộc về xã hội
20. spot on (adj, informal) /spɒt ɒn/: chính xác
21. spray (v) /spreɪ/: xịt
22. spread (v) /spred/: lan truyền
23. table manners (n, plural) /'teɪbl 'mænə (r)/: quy tắc ăn uống trong bàn ăn, phép tắc ăn uống
24. tip (n, v) /tɪp/: tiền boa, boa
25. unity (n) /'ju:nəti/: sự thống nhất, đoàn kết
26. upwards (adv) /'ʌpwədz/: hướng lên trên
27. You're kidding! (idiom) /jʊə kɪdɪŋ/: Bạn nói đùa thế thôi!

## B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### I. ÔN TẬP SHOULD (NÊN) VÀ SHOULDN'T (KHÔNG NÊN) DÙNG ĐỂ ĐƯA RA LỜI KHUYÊN.

Should là động từ khiếm khuyết, do đó nó không cần chia theo các ngôi và luôn cần một động từ nguyên thể không có "to" đi đằng sau.

| Thể       | Thể khẳng định + thể phủ định                                                                                                                          | Thể nghi vấn                                                                                                              |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Chức năng | Dùng để diễn tả lời khuyên, hay ý nghĩ điều gì đúng, nên làm hoặc không nên làm.                                                                       | Dùng để hỏi ý kiến hay yêu cầu một lời khuyên.                                                                            |
| Cấu trúc  | S + should/ shouldn't + V + (các thành phần khác                                                                                                       | Should + S + V + (các thành phần khác)?<br>⇒ Yes, S + should<br>⇒ No, S + shouldn't                                       |
| Ví dụ     | We should brush our teeth twice a day.<br>(Chúng ta nên đánh răng hai lần một ngày)<br>We shouldn't waste water.<br>(Chúng ta không nên lãng phí nước) | Should we buy a new car?<br>(Chúng ta có nên mua một chiếc ô tô mới không?)<br>Yes, we should.<br>(Có, chúng ta nên mua.) |

## BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

### Bài 1: Hoàn thành những câu sau với động từ khuyết thiếu "should" hoặc "shouldn't".

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ stay up too late because it's not good for your health.
2. No one \_\_\_\_\_ be late for school tomorrow because we will have an exam.
3. I think there \_\_\_\_\_ a garbage dump in front of the restaurant.
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ go for a check-up regularly.
5. I think you \_\_\_\_\_ be more tactful.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ you have any questions, please write me an email.
7. What \_\_\_\_\_ I do to learn better?
8. My father thinks that I \_\_\_\_\_ be so into computer games.
9. The candidates \_\_\_\_\_ be here before 10am, or they will be disqualified.
10. You \_\_\_\_\_ learn about some cultural features of the country you are going to visit.
11. Mary \_\_\_\_\_ take any pills before seeing the doctor.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ James apply for the job at this company? Yes, he should.
13. How much time \_\_\_\_\_ I spend on this task?
14. Old people \_\_\_\_\_ work too hard. They need an abundance of time to relax.
15. Parents \_\_\_\_\_ let their children expose to smartphones at an early age.

### Bài 2: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết câu hoàn chỉnh với "should" hoặc "shouldn't".

1. You/ go/ to/ see/ doctor/ regularly.  
.....
2. Which dress/ I/ wear/ today?  
.....

3. The teacher/ think/ Jim/ study/ harder.  
.....
4. The boys/ not/ climb up/ the wall.  
.....
5. I/ watch TV/ go out/ with/ friends/ now?  
.....
6. If/ Jim/ be/ sick, he/ stay/ home.  
.....
7. How much/ water/ we/ drink/ everyday?  
.....
8. What/ I/ not/ do/ at/ Chinese restaurant?  
.....
9. You/ inform/ your parents/ before/ you/ go.  
.....
10. Josh/ not/ devote/ all/ his free time/ to/ playing/ games.  
.....

**Bài 3: Chuyển những câu sau thành câu đưa ra lời khuyên với “should” hoặc “shouldn’t”.**

Ex: They wear formal clothes when attending the conference.

⇒ They should wear formal clothes when attending the conference.

1. Parents instill in their children a respect for their country’s tradition and culture.  
.....
2. Everyone goes home for a family reunion regularly.  
.....
3. You travel more to broaden your horizon.  
.....
4. What does Jim do to study better?  
.....
5. We don’t go to on our vacation because it’s very far from our location.  
.....
6. They are never rude to other people.  
.....
7. You pay more attention to what your parents say.  
.....
8. Whenever you go, you pay close attention to the manner and etiquettes there.  
.....

**II. Động từ khuyết thiếu “Must”, “Have to”**

Trong tiếng Anh, must và have to đều mang nghĩa là “phải”, dùng để diễn tả sự cưỡng bách, bắt buộc. Tuy nhiên, sự khác biệt về cách dùng của 2 động từ khuyết thiếu này được thể hiện ở dưới bảng sau.

Phân biệt Must và Have to

**Thể khẳng định**

| <b>must + V</b>                                                                                                                                                                                           | <b>have/ has to + V</b>                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Mang ý nghĩa của sự bắt buộc đến từ người nói(mang tính chủ quan)                                                                                                                                         | Mang ý nghĩa sự bắt buộc đến từ hoàn cảnh bên ngoài, do luật lệ, quy tắc hay người khác quyết định (mang tính khách quan)                                                                                  |
| Ví dụ :<br>I must finish the exercise<br>(Tôi phải hoàn thành bài tập)<br>(Situation: I’m going to have a party.)<br>Câu này có thể được nói trong tình huống người nói sắp có một bữa tiệc, nên cần phải | Ví dụ :<br>I have to finish this exercise.<br>(Tôi phải hoàn thành bài tập)<br>(Situation: Tomorrow is the deadline.)<br>Câu này có thể được nói trong tình huống, ngày mai là hạn cuối cùng để hoàn thành |

|                                   |                                                |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| hoàn thành bài tập để đi dự tiệc. | bài tập nên người nói phải hoàn thành bài tập. |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|

### Thẻ phủ định

| <b>mustn't + V</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | <b>don't/doesn't + V</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Diễn tả ý cấm đoán                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Diễn tả ý không cần thiết phải làm gì                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Ví dụ:<br><br>You must not eat that.<br>(Bạn không được phép ăn cái đó)<br>(Situation: It's already stale)<br><br>Câu có thể được nói trong tình huống thức ăn đã thiu rồi, cho nên người nói cấm đoán người nghe không được ăn món đó. | Ví dụ:<br><br>You don't have to eat that.<br>(Bạn không cần phải ăn thứ đó)<br>(Situation: I can see you dislike that.)<br><br>Câu này có thể được nói trong tình huống người nói thấy người kia không thích ăn món đó, do vậy không bắt buộc người đó phải ăn. |

### BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

**Bài 4: Điền động từ khuyết thiếu “must” hoặc “mustn’t” vào chỗ trống để hoàn thành các câu sau.**

- I \_\_\_\_\_ do the laundry every 2 days
- You \_\_\_\_\_ stay out too late.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ break the class's rule
- My mother doesn't want me to arrive home late, so I \_\_\_\_\_ leave now.
- Those boys \_\_\_\_\_ finish their homework before going out.
- Jim \_\_\_\_\_ finish his essay today because he's very busy tomorrow.
- Passengers \_\_\_\_\_ use phones on the plane.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ be late for school tomorrow.
- Children \_\_\_\_\_ be accompanied by an adult when visiting this dangerous place.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ be home before dinner.
- Students \_\_\_\_\_ talk during the exam.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ cheat in a test.
- There \_\_\_\_\_ be someone upstairs. I can hear the noise.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ give up on what we are doing.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ let strangers enter the house while I'm not in.

**Bài 5: Hoàn thành các câu sau bằng động từ khuyết thiếu “must” hoặc “have to” và động từ trong ngoặc.**

- I \_\_\_\_\_ learn Japanese. I need it my job.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ learn Japanese. I love it.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ wake up early tomorrow. I want to watch the sunrise.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ wake up early tomorrow. I have a meeting early in the morning
- I \_\_\_\_\_ wear a black dress because I want to look good.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ wear a black dress because that is the requirement of my company.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ go home now because it's too late.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ go home now because I have a lot to do.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ go to see my friend because I miss her.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ go to see my classmate because we work on the same project.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ wear a tie in the company. It's one of their rules.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ go abroad next week. My boss wants me to sign a contract with our foreign customers.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ work harder. I want to be successful.
- This room is mess, I \_\_\_\_\_ find time to clean it!
- You really \_\_\_\_\_ stop driving so fast or you'll have an accident!

**Bài 6: Điền động từ khuyết thiếu “mustn’t” hoặc “don’t have to” vào chỗ trống để hoàn thành các câu sau.**

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ pick me up tomorrow. I will take a taxi.
2. Look at that sign! You \_\_\_\_\_ walk on the grass.
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ blame anyone for your mistakes. You need to be responsible for yourself.
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ be absent from class tomorrow because the teacher will check your attendance.
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ prepare dinner because we will eat out tonight.
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ leave any rubbish here. It is forbidden.
7. You \_\_\_\_\_ let anyone know that. It is a big secret.
8. You \_\_\_\_\_ come early tomorrow because the event will start late.
9. You \_\_\_\_\_ park your car here. There is a “No parking sign”
10. We don’t have much money left. We \_\_\_\_\_ waste anymore.
11. They \_\_\_\_\_ forget their homework at home.
12. I \_\_\_\_\_ do the housework because I have a maid do it for me.
13. They \_\_\_\_\_ break the rule that way. It is unacceptable.
14. I \_\_\_\_\_ use the computer after 11pm because my mother doesn’t allow me to.
15. You \_\_\_\_\_ buy that book. I will lend you mine.

**Bài 7. Đánh dấu (V) trước câu đúng, đánh dấu (x) trước câu sai và sửa lại cho đúng**

1. It’s raining outside. Tim has to take his umbrella. \_\_\_\_\_  
.....
2. I can give you a hand. So you mustn’t do it alone. \_\_\_\_\_  
.....
3. They mustn’t be hurry because the film starts late. \_\_\_\_\_  
.....
4. You must stop at the red light. \_\_\_\_\_  
.....
5. Tomorrow is Monday but I mustn’t go to work. \_\_\_\_\_  
.....
6. I am short-sighted so I must wear glasses. \_\_\_\_\_  
.....
7. You mustn’t smoke here. There are a lot of children around you. \_\_\_\_\_  
.....
8. Everyone have to bey the school’s rules. \_\_\_\_\_  
.....
9. It is warm today so we mustn’t wear thick coat. \_\_\_\_\_  
.....
10. My father will buy me a bike so I don’t have to walk to school any more. \_\_\_\_\_  
.....

## BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO.

**Bài 8: Hoàn thành các câu sau bằng động từ khuyết thiếu “should” hoặc “shouldn’t” và những động từ cho sẵn.**

|      |         |      |       |
|------|---------|------|-------|
| talk | discuss | be   | be    |
| try  | break   | wear | thank |

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ your host for taking care of you when you stayed.
2. You \_\_\_\_\_ with your mouth full.
3. Our teacher always reminds that we \_\_\_\_\_ punctual.
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ the local specialities when you visit a foreign place.
5. It is a tough question. I think we \_\_\_\_\_ and work out a solution together.
6. This year, \_\_\_\_\_ we \_\_\_\_\_ with tradition and go travelling on Tet holiday?
7. Tourists \_\_\_\_\_ short clothes when they visit such places as temple or mausoleum.
8. I am going to travel by plane next week. My mother says that my luggage \_\_\_\_\_ so heavy.

**Bài 9: Dựa vào thông tin cho sẵn trong bảng, viết câu với động từ khuyết thiếu “should” hoặc “shouldn’t” để diễn tả những điều nên/ không nên làm gì khi sống ở Nhật Bản.**

| Do's                                                                    | Don'ts                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Be on time                                                           | 2. Pass food from one pair of chopsticks to the other. |
| 3. Bring your Business Card                                             | 4. Brings outside food into restaurants                |
| 5. Say “ itadakimasu” before eating ,especially if you're being treated | 6. Use the phone in trains and elevators               |
| 7. Make loud gulping noises when drinking                               | 8. Drink or eat while walking                          |
| 9. Cover your mouth with your other hand when using toothpick.          | 10. Use your chopsticks to point at somebody.          |

When you are in Japan .

- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....

**Bài 10: Hoàn thành các câu dưới đây với thể khẳng định hoặc phủ định của “must, have to, has to”**

- Students \_\_\_\_\_ look at their notes while they are taking the exam.
- My mother has a terrible headache so she \_\_\_\_\_ stop working today.
- There is an accident and the traffic is blocked. We \_\_\_\_\_ to stay here for a while.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ do that, Marry, I'll do it later.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ wait in line like anyone else
- You \_\_\_\_\_ light a naked flame near the gas station.
- While operating a motor vehicle, you \_\_\_\_\_ drink and drive.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ skip classes too often or you will not pass the final exam.
- They \_\_\_\_\_ work hard and earn a lot of money. They want to move to a larger apartment.
- Mr. Smith \_\_\_\_\_ drive to work because his company is near his house.

**Bài 11: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng**

#### VIETNAMESE CELEBRATION FOR LONGEVITY CUSTOM

In Vietnam, People count each passing year in a person's life with increasing esteem and respect from their family and neighborhood. Formerly, at the age of 40 one was (1) \_\_\_\_\_ for being an old man or woman. According to village customs, a man of 50 is to be honored as an old man. Old men stop working and are no longer village officials. (2) \_\_\_\_\_, they are still invited to festivals and to sears in the communal house. In the festival, they are seated honor ably on the red-bordered (3) \_\_\_\_\_. Showing (4) \_\_\_\_\_ and esteem for the elderly is a (5) \_\_\_\_\_ that remains today. Nowadays, when grandfathers or parents reach the ages of 70, 80, 90, their children and grandchildren organize ceremonies for (6) \_\_\_\_\_ which are generally held on birthdays or during the spring days during Tet.

- A. honor B. honored C. consider D. considered
- A. Moreover B. But C. Although D. However
- A. curtains B. mats C. sofas D. carpets
- A. respects B. respect C. respective D. respectful
- A. tradition B. culture C. custom D. lifestyle
- A. longevity B. length C. age D. life

**Bài 12. Đọc đoạn văn dưới đây và điền T(True) trước câu có nội dung đúng với nội dung bài đọc, điền F(False) trước câu có nội dung sai với nội dung bài đọc.**

Traditional Vietnamese customs and habits have been formed time to time for thousands of years. This creates a long – lasting culture. Despite the domination of Chinese and other powers, Vietnamese people still remains their unique cultural identity.

In the course of development, customs and habits are indispensable spiritual field in Vietnamese culture. It is the original cultural values of the country strongly that define the identity and the long-lastingness of culture in Vietnam. In the entire history of Vietnam, Vietnamese culture is the combination of native culture, cultural exchange with China, Asian region and western countries. However, with a firm native culture, Vietnamese people keep their culture away from being assimilation, and “Vietnamizing” those cultural features instead. Vietnam culture is characterized by a series of unique customs and habits such as worshipping ancestors, chewing betel, and other customs in traditional ceremonies like funeral ceremony, long –life ceremony, etc. These customs and habits are associated with community of villages. Vietnam is a country of festivals, especially in spring. There are several famous festivals featuring Vietnamese culture like Tet Nguyen Dan, Tet Nguyen Tieu, Tet Han Thuc, Tet Doan Ngo, Mid-Autumn Festival, etc. Yet, customs and habits of Vietnamese people vary from region to region, and ethnic group to ethnic group.

1. Vietnam has a long –lasting culture. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Due to the invasions of Chinese and other powers, Vietnamese people hardly remain their unique cultural identity. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Vietnamese culture is the combination of many cultural components. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Vietnamese people build their traditions partly by “Vietnamizing” foreign traditions. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Vietnamese customs and habits are related to community of villages. \_\_\_\_\_
6. In Vietnam, festivals are mostly held in spring. \_\_\_\_\_
7. In Vietnam, customs and habits of people are quite the same throughout the country. \_\_\_\_\_

**TEST 1 UNIT 4**

**I. Choose the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.**

- |                         |                      |                      |                      |
|-------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>sound</u>      | B. <u>touch</u>      | C. <u>down</u>       | D. <u>account</u>    |
| 2. A. <u>design</u>     | B. <u>preserve</u>   | C. <u>basic</u>      | D. <u>physical</u>   |
| 3. A. <u>occupation</u> | B. <u>occasion</u>   | C. <u>shake</u>      | D. <u>miraculous</u> |
| 4. A. <u>concerned</u>  | B. <u>received</u>   | C. <u>attached</u>   | D. <u>concealed</u>  |
| 5. A. <u>teacher</u>    | B. <u>clear</u>      | C. <u>reason</u>     | D. <u>mean</u>       |
| 6. A. <u>letter</u>     | B. <u>twelve</u>     | C. <u>person</u>     | D. <u>sentence</u>   |
| 7. A. <u>included</u>   | B. <u>received</u>   | C. <u>remembered</u> | D. <u>annoyed</u>    |
| 8. A. <u>enough</u>     | B. <u>young</u>      | C. <u>country</u>    | D. <u>mountain</u>   |
| 9. A. <u>speech</u>     | B. <u>March</u>      | C. <u>machine</u>    | D. <u>children</u>   |
| 10. A. <u>face</u>      | B. <u>commercial</u> | C. <u>center</u>     | D. <u>city</u>       |

**II. Choose the words that have the different stress from the others.**

- |                  |                 |              |               |
|------------------|-----------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. A. resident   | B. cutlery      | C. ancestor  | D. permission |
| 2. A. generation | B. presentation | C. necessity | D. obligation |
| 3. A. respect    | B. mention      | C. expert    | D. worship    |
| 4. A. pagoda     | B. complement   | C. society   | D. tradition  |
| 5. A. custom     | B. explain      | C. chopstick | D. manner     |

**III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.**

1. The *wai* is the traditional \_\_\_\_\_ of people in Thailand.  
A. greeting      B. hello      C. goodbye      D. greetings
2. When two Maori people meet, they \_\_\_\_\_ each other’s noses.  
A. take      B. feel      C. touch      D. kiss
3. Do you know the \_\_\_\_\_ way to welcome people in Tibet?  
A. custom      B. customer      C. customary      D. tradition
4. The xoe dance is a spiritual \_\_\_\_\_ of Thai ethnic people.  
A. customs      B. tradition      C. habit      D. dance
5. In Viet Nam you shouldn’t use only the first name to \_\_\_\_\_ people older than you.

- A. address                      B. talk                      C. say                      D. speak
6. We are going to prepare \_\_\_\_\_ sticky rice served with grilled chicken for the celebration.  
A. five-coloured                      B. five-colours                      C. five-colour                      D. five colours
7. A tradition is something special that is \_\_\_\_\_ through the generations.  
A. passed                      B. passed to                      C. passed down                      D. passed out
8. According to the \_\_\_\_\_ in England, we have to use a knife and fork at dinner.  
A. table ways                      B. table manners                      C. behaviours                      D. differences
9. We have to \_\_\_\_\_ our shoes when we go inside a pagoda.  
A. put on                      B. give off                      C. turn off                      D. take off
10. In Australia, you shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ on a person's accent.  
A. dislike                      B. criticize                      C. hate                      D.

**IV. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D.**

1. My parents usually \_\_\_\_\_ work very early.  
A. go to                      B. going to                      C. went                      D. to go
2. There is a computer \_\_\_\_\_ the middle \_\_\_\_\_ the room.  
A. in / of                      B. in / in                      C. on / of                      D. on / in
3. Nam has to leave to tidy his room every day.  
A. should                      B. must                      C. ought to                      D. need to
4. Nga \_\_\_\_\_ have a holiday in Da Lat next summer.  
A. is going                      B. will to                      C. are going to                      D. is going to
5. Lan isn't \_\_\_\_\_ to go to school today.  
A. enough well                      B. enough good                      C. well enough                      D. good enough
6. Boys and girls, you'll have to do this experiment \_\_\_\_\_ this afternoon.  
A. yourself                      B. yourselves                      C. yourself                      D. yourselves
7. We must put all the small objects such as beads out \_\_\_\_\_ children's reach.  
A. of                      B. in                      C. on                      D. to
8. You are too thin. You \_\_\_\_\_ eat much more meat.  
A. ought                      B. ought not                      C. ought to                      D. ought not to
9. I and my pen friend \_\_\_\_\_ Ho Chi Minh's Mausoleum last Sunday.  
A. visit                      B. visited                      C. visits                      D. visiting
10. Let us \_\_\_\_\_ to the school's library next Monday.  
A. going                      B. to go                      C. to going                      D. go
11. Peter doesn't talk much in public. He's rather \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. kind                      B. sociable                      C. humorous                      D. reserved
12. You must not let children play in the street because it is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. suitable                      B. dangerous                      C. safe                      D. careful
13. He'll come \_\_\_\_\_ to pick you \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. over / up                      B. over / on                      C. in / up                      D. on / in
14. The sun always \_\_\_\_\_ in the East and \_\_\_\_\_ in the West.  
A. rise/ set                      B. rises/ set                      C. rises/ sets                      D. has risen/ set
15. He spends most of his time \_\_\_\_\_ charity work.  
A. to do                      B. did                      C. doing                      D. with doing

**V. Complete the sentences with a form of "have to" or "should". Make the verbs negative when necessary.**

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ come with me if you don't want to. I'll go on my own.
2. If you need some help with your homework, you \_\_\_\_\_ go to the library.
3. If you have a ticket, you \_\_\_\_\_ queue. You can go straight in.
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ tell lies. It's wrong.
5. Nick works too much. I think he \_\_\_\_\_ take it easy.
6. Your hair's too long. I think you \_\_\_\_\_ get it cut.
7. Your clothes are dirty. You \_\_\_\_\_ wash them.
8. I'm going to bed. I \_\_\_\_\_ get up early tomorrow.
9. I'd like to meet your best friend. You \_\_\_\_\_ invite him/ her round.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ tell my parents where I am, then they don't worry.

**VI. Rewrite the sentences using "should/ shouldn't".**



1. Don't touch this switch.  
→ This switch .....
2. It isn't a good idea for you to put so much salt in the soup.  
→ You shouldn't .....
3. It isn't a good idea for you to drink so much alcohol.  
→ You shouldn't .....
4. Don't trip over the step into the kitchen.  
→ You shouldn't .....
5. You can't park here because it's a restricted area.  
→ You shouldn't .....
6. Why didn't they tell me about these changes earlier?  
→ I should have been .....
7. Don't lean against the newly-painted wall.  
→ You shouldn't .....
8. Don't smoke too many cigarettes.  
→ You shouldn't .....
9. Children are advised to go to bed early.  
→ Children should .....
10. You had better not to stay up late.  
→ You shouldn't .....

**VII. Read the passage about introducing Vietnamese customs to foreigners, and then choose the best answer A, B, C or D.**

The Vietnamese are known to be polite, hospitable and sensitive. They have a casual and friendly (1) \_\_\_\_\_. They regard friendship as being very important throughout one's life. They are always open to visits from friends. Drop-in visits are welcome. The Vietnamese are very (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to their family.

When they (3) \_\_\_\_\_ you a gift, the Vietnamese will usually speak lightly about it. Even though it is an expensive gift, they may pretend it is of no great monetary value.

(4) \_\_\_\_\_ 4,000 years of civilization, the Vietnamese are proud people who like to recite to a myth that they are descendants of an angel and a dragon.

If you happen to be in their homes at meal time, the Vietnamese will probably (5) \_\_\_\_\_ you to sit down and share whatever food is (6) \_\_\_\_\_. Let them know that you enjoy their food is one way in successfully (7) \_\_\_\_\_ a better relationship with them.

When they invite you to their homes for a meal, celebration, or special occasion, some (8) \_\_\_\_\_ - usually food, fruits, chocolate or liquors - should be offered to the host's family.

- |                 |                |              |                 |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. tradition | B. feature     | C. culture   | D. manner       |
| 2. A. closed    | B. closing     | C. close     | D. being closed |
| 3. A. offer     | B. carry       | C. send      | D. sell         |
| 4. A. Of        | B. With        | C. At        | D. In           |
| 5. A. take      | B. require     | C. speak     | D. invite       |
| 6. A. good      | B. present     | C. available | D. delicious    |
| 7. A. setting   | B. building    | C. taking    | D. being        |
| 8. A. gifts     | B. invitations | C. offers    | D. situations   |

**VIII. Read the passage and answer the questions below**

David wants to buy a Christmas present for a very special person, his mother. David's father gives him \$5.00 pocket money a week and David puts \$2.00 a week into his bank account. After three months David takes \$20.00 out of his bank account and goes to the shopping mall. He looks and looks for a perfect gift.

Suddenly he sees a beautiful brooch in the shape of his favourite pet. He says to himself, "My mother loves jewelry, and the brooch costs only \$17.00." He buys the brooch and takes it home. He wraps the present in Christmas paper and places it under the tree. He is very excited and he is looking forward to Christmas morning to see the joy on his mother's face.

But when his mother opens the present she screams with fright because she sees a spider.

1. Who does David get his money from?  
.....
2. What does David want to buy his Mother?  
.....

3. How much money does David take to the mall?  
.....
4. What does David buy his mother?  
.....
5. What does David do with the present when he takes it home?  
.....
6. Why does David's mother scream?  
.....
7. Why does David buy a spider brooch?  
.....
8. Where does David put the present on Christmas Eve?  
.....

**IX. Rewrite and complete the sentences using "should".**

Ex: If I were you, I'd go to the doctor's.

→ I think **you should go to the doctor's.**

1. It's a good idea to wear a warm coat.  
You .....
2. My advice is to leave early.  
I think you .....
3. It's a good idea to take more exercise.  
You .....
4. In my opinion, it's a good idea for you to read a lot.  
I think .....
5. It's a good idea to do that.  
You .....
6. My advice is for you to ride a bike.  
I think .....
7. If I were you, I would buy a dog.  
I think .....

**X. Find and correct the mistakes of these sentences**

1. He don't go to the class today.  
.....
2. I didn't went to the cinema last night.  
.....
3. Mr Brown doesn't lives in a big city. He lives in the countryside.  
.....
4. My sister hasn't breakfast very often.  
.....
5. Phuc isn't enough strong to lift the bag.  
.....
6. They have a full of flowers garden.  
.....
7. They no from Greece.  
.....
8. This coffee is too heavy for drink.  
.....
9. Our new car is greens.  
.....
10. Mr and Mrs John is on holiday.  
.....

**TEST 2 UNIT 4**

**I. Choose the best answer A, B, Cor D to complete the sentences.**

1. The wai is the traditional \_\_\_\_\_ of people in Thailand.  
A. goodbye      B. hello      C. greeting      D.greetings

2. When two Maori people meet, they\_\_ each other's noses.  
A. touch      B. feel      C. take      D. kiss
3. Do you know the way to welcome people in Tibet?  
A. custom      B. customer      C. customary      D. tradition
4. The *xoe* dance is a spiritual \_\_\_\_\_ of Thai ethnic people.  
A. customs      B. tradition      C. habit      D. dance
5. In Viet Nam you shouldn't use only the first name to \_\_\_\_\_ people older than you.  
A. speak      B. talk      C. say      D. address
6. We are going to prepare \_\_\_\_\_ sticky rice served with grilled chicken for the celebration.  
A. five colours      B. five-colours      C. five-colour      D. five-coloured
7. A tradition is something special that is \_\_\_\_\_ through the generations.  
A. passed      B. passed to      C. passed down      D. passed out
8. According to the \_\_\_\_\_ in England, we have to use a knife and fork at dinner  
A. table ways      B. table manners      C. behaviours      D. differences
9. We have to \_\_\_\_\_ our shoes when we go inside a pagoda.  
A. take off      B. give off      C. turn off      D. put on
10. In Australia, you shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ on a person's accent.  
A. comment      B. criticize      C. hate      D. dislike

**II. Give advice "should" or "shouldn't", using the cues about table manners in Japan.**

1. Don't drink at a dinner party until everyone is served.

2. Raise your drink and say "kampai!" (cheers) before you drink.

Use a small wet cloth at most Japanese restaurants to wash your hands before eating.

4. Don't use it as a napkin or to touch any part of your face.

5. Use chopsticks during the meal.

6. Don't tip in any situation in Japan.

**III. Complete the sentences with a form of "have to" or "should". Make the verbs negative when necessary.**

31. Your hair's too long. I think you \_\_\_\_\_ get it cut.
32. Your clothes are dirty. You \_\_\_\_\_ wash them.
33. I'm going to bed. I \_\_\_\_\_ get up early tomorrow.
34. I'd like to meet your best friend. You \_\_\_\_\_ invite him/her round.
35. I \_\_\_\_\_ tell my parents where I am, then they don't worry.
36. You \_\_\_\_\_ come with me if you don't want to. I'll go on my own.
37. If you need some help with your homework, you \_\_\_\_\_ go to the library.
38. If you have a ticket, you \_\_\_\_\_ queue. You can go straight in.
39. You \_\_\_\_\_ tell lies. It's wrong.
40. Nick works too much. I think he \_\_\_\_\_ take it easy

**IV. Complete the sentences, using "have to" and the verbs from the box in the correct form either positive or negative.**

|               |               |             |                |
|---------------|---------------|-------------|----------------|
| <i>open</i>   | <i>talk</i>   | <i>stop</i> | <i>take</i>    |
| <i>decide</i> | <i>get up</i> | <i>send</i> | <i>explain</i> |

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ early at the weekends. (negative)
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ which job I want before the end of the week. (positive)
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ the bus into the city center. We can walk. (negative)
4. She \_\_\_\_\_ the shop at 9 o'clock every morning. (positive)
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ quietly in the library. (positive)

6. You \_\_\_\_\_ the letter to him by post. I will see him tomorrow and I can give it to him then. (negative)

7. You \_\_\_\_\_ it to me. I understand the problem. (negative)

8. We \_\_\_\_\_ talking when the lesson starts. (positive)

**V. Complete the tips about Vietnamese table manners by filling in each blank with “should” or “shouldn’t”.**

1. When having a meal, you \_\_\_\_\_ pass all dishes using both hands.

2. You \_\_\_\_\_ place your chopsticks on the designated chopsticks holder when taking a break to drink or to speak.

3. You \_\_\_\_\_ stick your chopsticks vertically in the middle of the rice bowl.

4. You \_\_\_\_\_ eat directly from the serving dish.

5. You \_\_\_\_\_ try every dish that is served before obtaining more of your favourite ones.

6. You \_\_\_\_\_ consume only meat, as it is the most expensive ingredient of the meal.

7. You \_\_\_\_\_ finish the food put on your plate because this shows respect for the cook and is not wasteful.

8. You \_\_\_\_\_ refuse any food offerings despite being full.

9. You \_\_\_\_\_ inform the host that you are full prior to being offered another dish.

10. When you finish a meal, you \_\_\_\_\_ place your chopsticks on top of your rice bowl.

**VI. What kinds of behaviour are acceptable in Viet Nam? Fill in the blanks with “You should” or “You shouldn’t”.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ introduce yourself to newcomers in your class.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ arrive on time when you’re invited to someone’s house.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ blow your nose in public.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ chew gum while talking to someone.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ call a teacher by his or her first name.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ stand up when the teacher enters the classroom.

7. \_\_\_\_\_ place the chopsticks on your bowl when you finish the meal.

8. \_\_\_\_\_ visit the classmates without calling first.

**VII. Read the information about customs in some countries, and then give the answers to the questions.**

#### *Different Customs*

Canada and the US: Don’t arrive early if you’re invited to someone’s home.

Indonesia: Never point to anything with your foot.

Korea: Don’t pass something to an older person or superior with only one hand.

Muslim countries: Don’t eat with your left hand.

Samoa: Don’t eat while you’re walking in the public.

Thailand: Never touch anyone except a child on the head.

1. In which country is foot considered a dirty part of the body?

2. In which country should we pay attention to eating in public?

3. In which country/ countries should we eat with the right hand?

4. In which country/ countries shouldn’t we arriving early at the party?

5. In which country/ countries should you show high respect to older people or superiors?

**VIII. Read the passage and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

In Japan, take off your shoes at the entrance to all homes, and most businesses and hotels. Usually a rack will be provided to store your shoes, and pair of guest slippers will be put nearby; many Japanese bring a pair of indoor slippers just in case, though.

Never wear slippers when you need to step onto a *tatami* mat (used in most Japanese homes and hotels), and be careful to remove the toilet slippers waiting for you in the bathroom. It is extremely bad form, for example, to reenter the main room of a house wearing slippers that have been running across a dirty area.

Unlike in western cultures, the Japanese bath is used after you have washed and rinsed and feel like soaking in extra-hot water for 10, 20, 30 minutes. If you happen to be invited into a Japanese household, you will be given the honor of using the bath first, usually before dinner. Be extra careful so as not to dirty the water in any way because of its importance.

1. Only take off your shoes when you enter a Japanese house.
2. Be careful with your slippers when you come back to the main room.
3. You mustn't wear slippers stepping onto a *tatami* mat.
4. The Japanese bath is also used for washing and rinsing.
5. The bath plays an important part in the Japanese life.

**IX. Read the passage about family traditions in Viet Nam, and do the tasks that follow.**

Marriage and family are very important in Viet Nam. In the countryside, parents often arrange marriages; divorce remains uncommon, though is more frequent in cities. In traditional Vietnamese families, roles are rigid. The man of the house is primarily responsible for the family's economic well being. Older children help to look after younger siblings. Discipline is viewed as a parental duty.

The woman of the house looks after her parents, husband and children. In rural areas, women also do much agricultural work. Vietnamese women live by the "four virtues": hard work, beauty, refined speech and excellent conduct.

The Vietnamese attach great importance to two traditional family obligations: to care for their parents in their old age and to worship them after death. In each Vietnamese family, there is at least one altar on which there are the pictures of their ancestors. Family members worship their ancestors because they think parents after death will go to live in another world and this altar is the place where the ancestors' souls live in. As a result, every day Vietnamese people lay flowers or sometimes fruits on the altar for the belief that those ancestors will enjoy them.

**Task 1: Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.**

| wer | A              | B                                                                                 |
|-----|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -   | 1. sibling (n) | A. the part of a person that is believed to continue exist after the body is dead |
| -   | 2. virtue (n)  | B. to pray to or to show respect for someone like a god                           |
| -   | 3. worship (v) | C. behaviour which shows high moral standards                                     |
| -   | 4. altar (n)   | D. the table used in ceremonies in a church, temple or family                     |
| -   | 5. soul (n)    | E. a brother or a sister                                                          |

**Task 2: Read the passage again, and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

6. In traditional Vietnamese families, the man has to support the family.
7. Children have to share housework with their parents.
8. Women in the countryside only look after their families.
9. Children have to take care of their parents in their old age and to worship them after death.
10. Every day Vietnamese people lay flowers or sometimes fruits on the altar because they believe those ancestors will eat the offerings.

**X. Read the passage and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

Culturally, in Thailand there are many practices and beliefs that are very different to those from other countries.

The Royal Family of Thailand is held in very high respect. Making impolite remarks about any of the royal family is against the law.

The traditional greeting is with two hands prayer-like palms together known as a "wai". If a local gives a "wai" to you, to be polite, it is nice to "wai" back. A "wai", however, is always appreciated.

Thai culture places certain spiritual importance to certain parts of the body. You should not point your feet at people, touch people with your feet, prop your feet up on seats or tables or step over people sitting on the ground. The head, in contrast, has a much higher importance. Avoid touching people on the head as this is considered very rude. You should also avoid sitting on pillows meant for head rests. In some

rural area, food is often served while seated on the ground. Stepping over food on the ground is another extremely rude gesture and will surely embarrass your Thai host.

Throughout all of Thailand, if you notice a pile of shoes at or near an entrance to a home, shop or guesthouse, you should remove your shoes before entry; it is considered rude not to do so.

**T F**

1. All people in Thailand respect the Royal Family highly.
2. A local person gives a "wai" to you, and you respond by saying "hello" if you are a foreigner.
3. The feet may be considered to be the dirtiest part of the body.
4. Never touch people on the head because the head is considered to rest on the pillow.
5. Remember to remove your shoes before entering a building.

**XI. Fill in each blank of the passage with the correct word from the box.**

|            |              |                |           |              |
|------------|--------------|----------------|-----------|--------------|
| activities | presentation | water-throwing | tradition | celebrations |
| festival   | enjoyment    | heat           | wishes    | fortune      |

### **Thai New Year (Songkran Festival)**

The traditional Thai New Year is celebrated in April each year. Thailand adopted this (1) \_\_\_\_\_ with the belief that the sun re-entered Aries and finished its orbit round the earth on April 13. In Thailand, this (2) \_\_\_\_\_ is celebrated for three days from April 13 to April 15. Before the (3) \_\_\_\_\_, people will clean their houses in the hope of casting away any bad luck of the old year, so that good (4) \_\_\_\_\_ will enter their new lives instead. Food and sweets will be prepared in advance for merit making and for treating guests.

The Songkran celebrations will begin with food (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to the monks who will walk along the streets in the early morning to receive food and other offerings. One of the most popular (6) \_\_\_\_\_ for young people is to convey their best (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to their elders by pouring water onto them or their palms. After this, it is time for children and young people to have full (8) \_\_\_\_\_ with water-throwing, dancing and folk games.

Do not expect to escape the (9) \_\_\_\_\_ activities, these take place on every street in Thailand. They can be a welcome break to the (10) \_\_\_\_\_ of the dry season, but if you wish to stay dry it is best to stay indoors!

**XII. Read the passage about introducing Vietnamese customs to foreigners, and then choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank in the following passage.**

The Vietnamese are known to be polite, hospitable and sensitive. They have a casual and friendly (1) \_\_\_\_\_. They regard friendship as being very important throughout one's life. They are always open to visits from friends. Drop-in visits are welcome. The Vietnamese are very (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to their family.

Even they (3) \_\_\_\_\_ you a gift, the Vietnamese will usually speak lightly about it. Even though it is an expensive gift, they may pretend it is of no great monetary value.

(4) \_\_\_\_\_ 4,000 years of civilization, the Vietnamese are proud people who like to recite to a myth that they are descendants of an angel and a dragon.

If you happen to be in their homes at meal time, the Vietnamese will probably (5) \_\_\_\_\_ you to sit down and share whatever food is (6) \_\_\_\_\_. Let them know that you enjoy their food is one way in successfully (7) \_\_\_\_\_ a better relationship with them.

When they invite you to their homes for a meal, celebration, or special occasion, some (8) \_\_\_\_\_ - usually food, fruits, chocolate or liquors - should be offered to the host's family.

- |                  |                |            |                 |
|------------------|----------------|------------|-----------------|
| 55. A. manner    | B. feature     | C. culture | D. tradition    |
| 56. A. closed    | B. closing     | C. close   | D. being closed |
| 57. A. sell      | B. carry       | C. send    | D. offer        |
| 58. A. Of        | B. With        | C. At      | D. In           |
| 59. A. take      | B. require     | C. speak   | D. invite       |
| 60. A. available | B. present     | C. good    | D. delicious    |
| 61. A. setting   | B. building    | C. taking  | D. being        |
| 62. A. offers    | B. invitations | C. gifts   | D. situations   |

**XIII. Make sentences about the xoe dance, using the words and phrases given. You can add some words and make changes.**

1. The xoe dance/ already/ considered/ a cultural and folklore activity/ Thai ethnic people/ Hoa Binh Province.

---

2. Ten centuries ago/*xoe*/performed/ the occasion/ the establishment/ the hamlets and villages/ or during the festivals/ the Thai ethnic people.

---

---

3. Now/ it/ develop/ into 36 dances/ and/ become/ the symbol/ solidarity/ among the ethnic groups/ the northwest

---

---

4. The *xoe* dance/ performed/ the boys and girls/ the hamlets.

---

---

5. They/ hold hands/ form/ a circle/ and/ dance together.

---

---

6. Musical instruments/ the dance/ include/ lutes/ drums/ two-chord fiddles/ gongs/ and cymbals.

---

---

7. For the Thai natives/ they/ not need/ learn the *xoe* dance/ because/ they/ dance automatically/ when they grow up.

---

---

8. Without *xoe* dance/ Thai boys and girls/ not become/ lovely couples.

---

#### TEST 3 UNIT 4

##### I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.

- |                           |                       |                        |                         |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. a. <u>w</u> rap        | b. <u>w</u> orship    | c. <u>w</u> ear        | d. <u>w</u> ife         |
| 2. a. chop <u>s</u> tick  | b. tradit <u>i</u> on | c. gi <u>f</u> t       | d. kni <u>f</u> e       |
| 3. a. obligat <u>i</u> on | b. occasi <u>o</u> n  | c. expressi <u>o</u> n | d. celebrati <u>o</u> n |
| 4. a. m <u>a</u> t        | b. tr <u>a</u> y      | c. pl <u>a</u> ce      | d. t <u>a</u> ble       |
| 5. a. <u>c</u> utlery     | b. <u>c</u> ustom     | c. <u>c</u> ompliment  | d. <u>c</u> ircle       |

##### II. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

- There's a tradition of having parties \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas.  
a. on                      b. in                      c. at                      d. for
- Generally, rice is served \_\_\_\_\_ fish, meat, soup and vegetable.  
a. to                      b. as                      c. in                      d. with
- You \_\_\_\_\_ speak when the teacher is speaking.  
a. needn't                      b. can't                      c. don't have to                      d. mustn't
- Christmas Eve is the day \_\_\_\_\_ people in some countries exchange their presents.  
a. that                      b. which                      c. when                      d. what
- Japanese have developed the custom of eating meals sitting on tatami \_\_\_\_\_, not on chairs  
a. towels                      b. prongs                      c. trays                      d. mats
- You have to \_\_\_\_\_ your hat when going inside the main worship area of the temple.  
a. take off                      b. put on                      c. break with                      d. get out
- You \_\_\_\_\_ place your chopsticks on your rice bowl when finished with a meal. Don't rest them on the table.  
a. shouldn't                      b. don't have to                      c. should                      d. mustn't
- He \_\_\_\_\_ a long family tradition of serving the military.  
a. followed                      b. obliged                      c. reflected                      d. agreed
- In the UK, families often celebrate Christmas together, \_\_\_\_\_ they can watch each other open their presents!  
a. though                      b. but                      c. because                      d. so
- 'We don't sweep the floor on the first day of Tet.' '\_\_\_\_\_ Why?'



- a. What a bad day!    b. You're kidding!    c. You're right.    d. Spot on!

### III. Choose the best answer to complete the sentences.

- You look really tired. You \_\_\_\_\_ take a few days off and have a holiday.  
a. should                      b. must                      c. have to                      d. can
- In Vietnam, you \_\_\_\_\_ take a deep bow as you do in Japan.  
a. mustn't                      b. don't have to                      c. should                      d. shouldn't
- Sorry, but my train is at 6.00. I \_\_\_\_\_ leave now.  
a. shouldn't                      b. ought to                      c. mustn't                      d. have to
- You \_\_\_\_\_ look' at other students' work. It's against the rules.  
a. shouldn't                      b. don't have to                      c. mustn't                      d. can't
- The airline only allows two pieces of luggage. You \_\_\_\_\_ pack too much!  
a. shouldn't                      b. mustn't                      c. don't have to                      d. couldn't
- John can't come because he \_\_\_\_\_ work tomorrow.  
a. should                      b. can                      c. must                      d. has to
- I know they enjoy their work, but they \_\_\_\_\_ work at the weekends. It's not good for them.  
a. shouldn't                      b. don't have to                      c. mustn't                      d. have to
- Elderly people \_\_\_\_\_ be treated with great respect  
a. shouldn't                      b. should                      c. aren't obliged to                      d. mustn't
- He \_\_\_\_\_ use chopsticks for spring roll. It is finger food.  
a. must                      b. has to                      c. doesn't have to                      d. should
- Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ wear a helmet when riding a motorbike. It's mandatory according to traffic law.  
a. isn't allowed to                      b. must                      c. can                      d. shouldn't

### IV. Match the word or phrase with its definition.

- |                       |                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. custom             | a. the feeling of being comfortable and happy in a particular place or with a particular group of people |
| 2. tradition          | b. the knives, forks, and spoons that you use for eating food                                            |
| 3. sharp              | c. an accepted way of behaving or of doing things                                                        |
| 4. table manners      | d. exactly right                                                                                         |
| 5. cutlery            | e. all the people who were born at about the same time                                                   |
| 6. prong              | f. a belief, custom or way of doing something that has existed for a long time                           |
| 7. generation         | g. the socially acceptable way to eat your food, especially when eating a meal with others               |
| 8. sense of belonging | h. each of the two or more long pointed parts of a fork                                                  |
| 9. host               | i. at a particular time exactly                                                                          |
| 10. spot on           | j. a person who invites guests to a meal, a party, etc.                                                  |

### V. Complete the sentences with the correct form or tense of the verbs in the box.

respect    wrap    worship    pass    take    reflect    reunite    break

- She \_\_\_\_\_ the present in red paper and tied it with yellow ribbon.
- All students should \_\_\_\_\_ their teachers.
- The culture of *xoe* dancing \_\_\_\_\_. Thai people's lifestyle and culture.
- We decided \_\_\_\_\_ with tradition and go away for Tet holidays.
- In my family the tradition that has been \_\_\_\_\_ down is eating together every Sunday.
- Almost every Vietnamese household sets an altar \_\_\_\_\_ their ancestors.
- It is considered very impolite not \_\_\_\_\_ off your shoes before entering a house in Japan.
- Lots of people come back \_\_\_\_\_ their families during Tet holiday

### VII. Complete the sentences with *should* or *shouldn't*.

- In Japan, you \_\_\_\_\_ point at people or things because it's considered rude.
- When invited to a Vietnamese home, you \_\_\_\_\_ bring gifts wrapped in brightly coloured paper.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ stand up chopsticks in your food between mouthfuls or when finished – it resembles incense sticks that are burned in memory of the dead.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ sweep your house on the first three days of the new year because all your money and success will be swept out too.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ smile and say "thank you" when receiving a gift.

6. When travelling on public transport, you \_\_\_\_\_ avoid loud phone conversations.
7. When visiting Thailand, you \_\_\_\_\_ mention the King and do anything that's disrespectful.
8. You \_\_\_\_\_ take your shoes off when entering homes or temples.
9. You \_\_\_\_\_ use both hands when giving and receiving things.
10. When dining in Thailand, you \_\_\_\_\_ eat with your fork, but do use it to push food onto your spoon.

**VIII. Complete the sentences with the correct form of *have to* and the verbs in brackets.**

1. When visiting a temple, tourists \_\_\_\_\_ (follow) some important customs.
2. The secretary \_\_\_\_\_ (answer) all the phone calls at work.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to work tomorrow. There's a holiday.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ we \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) another ticket to see this part of the castle?
5. Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ (recycle) as much as possible.
6. Susan \_\_\_\_\_ (come) to the town with us if she doesn't want to.
7. In our country, children \_\_\_\_\_ (wear) a uniform at school.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ (do) his work tonight? Can he do it tomorrow?
9. You \_\_\_\_\_ (put) a stamp on this letter. It says FREEPOST on it.
10. We \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) talking when the lesson starts.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ all the students \_\_\_\_\_ (take) the final test?
12. She \_\_\_\_\_ (take) an umbrella. I'm sure it isn't going to rain.
13. I \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) the party early last night – I wasn't very well.
14. It was a lovely holiday. We \_\_\_\_\_ (do) anything.
15. The children are happy because they \_\_\_\_\_ (do) any homework today.

**IX. Underline the correct form.**

1. Children *must* / *have to* start school when they are five.
2. In many countries, you *should* / *must* wear a seat belt in the car - it's the law.
3. I know you like sugar but you *shouldn't* / *don't have to* eat quite so much - it's bad for you.
4. I'm not working tomorrow, so I *mustn't* / *don't have to* get up early.
5. The manager suggested that we *have to* / *should* try to find another hotel.
6. Kids *should* / *have to* wear a life vest. That's a regulation.
7. You *mustn't* / *don't have to* smoke in here; smoking isn't allowed in the airport.
8. You *must* / *should* hand in your homework on Tuesday or your mark will be zero.
9. You *have to* / *don't have to* dress up for the party. Wear whatever you feel comfortable in.
10. You *should* / *have to* ask the teacher to help you if you don't understand the lesson.

**X. Complete each sentence with a suitable preposition.**

1. Today we're going to learn \_\_\_\_\_ customs and traditions.
2. The tradition has been passed \_\_\_\_\_ from father to son for generations.
3. They still follow the custom \_\_\_\_\_ pinning money to the bride's dress.
4. Vietnamese women often wear *ao dai* \_\_\_\_\_ special occasions.
5. We decided to break \_\_\_\_\_ tradition and have fish for Thanksgiving dinner.
6. They take their shoes \_\_\_\_\_ when entering the house to avoid getting the floor dirty.
7. According to tradition, we have fireworks \_\_\_\_\_ New Year's Eve.
8. It is the custom in that country \_\_\_\_\_ women to marry young.
9. We often talk about our day at school or work \_\_\_\_\_ the dinner table.
10. Gifts should be wrapped \_\_\_\_\_ colourful paper.

**XI. Supply the correct tense and form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. Last week, we \_\_\_\_\_ (have) dinner with a French family.
2. I hate eating with spoon because it \_\_\_\_\_ (cause) trouble when I eat fish.
3. In the past, *ao dai* \_\_\_\_\_ (wear) by both men and women.
4. The speaker \_\_\_\_\_ (give) a presentation on Vietnamese customs and traditions right now.
5. She \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) to six countries since she \_\_\_\_\_ (start) the job.
6. Our family \_\_\_\_\_ (have) dinner together every Saturday night. It's our family tradition.
7. I hope I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a chance to visit your country soon.
8. When in Japan, you should avoid \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) on the go.
9. I think you should \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the doctor. You look terrible.
10. The Japanese tend \_\_\_\_\_ (use) their mobile phones discreetly when in public.

## **XII. Write the correct form of the words in brackets.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ when dining, South Koreans use cushions to sit on the floor and eat from a low table. (tradition)
2. The wai is the traditional form of \_\_\_\_\_ in Thailand. (greet)
3. They weren't \_\_\_\_\_ to live with their parents after the wedding. (obligation)
4. It is considered \_\_\_\_\_ to address an elder with his or her given name. (polite)
5. Is that woman the \_\_\_\_\_ of the party? (host)
6. The children in our family are always \_\_\_\_\_ to their elders. (respect)
7. Custom \_\_\_\_\_ from tradition in some aspects such as scale and time. (different)
8. Don't use your personal chopsticks to get food from the \_\_\_\_\_ dish. (serve)
9. Many families have three \_\_\_\_\_, which create unique cultural features. (generate)
10. We have lots of customs and it can get a bit \_\_\_\_\_ for visitors. (confuse)

## **XIV. Read the text carefully, then answer the questions.**

### **BRITISH STRANGE FOOD HABITS**

Perhaps you know about some of the food that British people eat, but do you know about their strange food habits? People from different parts of the UK and from different classes call their meals by different names. They call the midday meal, lunch or dinner and the evening meal, dinner, supper or tea. Tea is also sandwiches, cakes and tea (the drink) at four or five o'clock. What do the British eat when they want something quick and easy? Baked beans, of course! You must warm them in a pan and eat them on toast.

Cheddar cheese is so popular in Britain that people run after it down a hill! This is a very strange English sport. You can see it once a year in Coopers Hill. There are four races, three for men and one for women. At the start of the race someone drops a big, round cheese down a very, very steep hill. About 15 racers run and jump after it. The first person to get to the bottom of the hill gets the cheese.

There is another strange race that the British have. It is a special Pancake Day race. Only women can run in the race. They must run with a pancake in a frying pan and throw it in the air three times. After the race, many English families eat pancakes with lemon juice and sugar.

Be careful if you have Christmas dinner with a British family – some of their Christmas customs are risky! Be very careful! Eat the Christmas pudding slowly if you don't want to eat a coin! When they are making their delicious dessert, British people put a coin in the mixture. The person who finds the coin in their pudding will be rich and happy.

1. What do the British call the evening meal?

2. \_\_\_\_\_  
What do the British have with baked beans?

3. \_\_\_\_\_  
How often is the Cheddar cheese sport event held?

4. \_\_\_\_\_  
What is the prize if you win the Cheddar cheese race?

5. \_\_\_\_\_  
Who can take part in a pancake race?

6. \_\_\_\_\_  
Why is it dangerous to eat Christmas pudding?

## **XV. Read the passage carefully and choose the correct answers.**

### **GIFT-GIVING CUSTOMS IN VIETNAM**

Gift giving is important in Vietnam because of the significance of interpersonal relationships in Vietnamese culture.

First and foremost, do not encourage corruption. There is a clear cut between gift-giving and bribery. Nevertheless, it is common in Vietnam for exchanging small gifts on certain occasions such as anniversary, Tet holiday... to express your respect, love, appreciation or gratitude.

Gift-giving customs depend on the context. If it is a private gift for one Vietnamese partner you should give the gift at a private occasion. If you have a gift for the whole office or company, you should give it after the business meeting with the whole office's employee.

Do not wrap a gift in the black paper because this colour is unlucky and associated with funerals in Vietnam. Gifts that symbolize cutting such as scissors, knives and other sharp objects should be avoided

because they mean the cutting of the relationship.

Vietnamese may or may not open these gifts when they are received; leave the option to them. You will also receive gifts and should defer to your host as to whether you should open it when received or not. Regardless of when it is opened or what it is, profuse thanks are always appropriate.

1. According to the passage, why is gift giving important in Vietnam?
  - a. Because it helps to establish a friendship.
  - b. Because it's common in Vietnamese culture.
  - c. Because it's the best way to build up a stable relationship.
  - d. Because personal relationships play a vital role in Vietnamese culture.
2. Which of the followings should not be a reason for gift giving?
  - a. To show appreciation
  - b. To bribe somebody
  - c. To express gratitude
  - d. To show affection
3. When giving a gift, you should \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. wrap it in black or white paper
  - b. give it in the business meeting
  - c. never give sharp objects, such as knives or scissors
  - d. avoid giving it at a private occasion
4. When receiving a gift, you should \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. always say "thank you?"
  - b. try to find what it is
  - c. open it in front of the giver
  - d. ask your host to open it
5. Which of the following is NOT true about gift giving customs in Vietnam?
  - a. Gift giving is a good way of strengthening relationships.
  - b. Gifts for your partners should be given at private occasions.
  - c. You should avoid giving anything sharp.
  - d. It is considered rude not to open the gift in front of the giver.

**XVI. Rewrite the sentence using the word in brackets.**

1. It's impolite of them to wear hats in the pagoda. (shouldn't)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. If I were you, I'd ask them about their customs. (should)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Is it necessary for me to tip in a coffee shop? (have to)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. It's not mandatory for staff to wear vests in their company. (need)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. It's good for us to keep our traditional customs. (should)  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. It's really important to remove your shoes when entering a temple. (must)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Photography is not allowed at some sacred places. (mustn't)  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. It's Saturday tomorrow, so it's not necessary for Jane to get up early. (have to)  
\_\_\_\_\_

**UNIT 5: FESTIVALS IN VIET NAM**

**A. VOCABULARY**

1. anniversary (n) /ˌænɪˈvɜːsəri/: ngày kỉ niệm
2. archway (n) /ˈɑːtʃweɪ/: mái vòm
3. carnival (n) /ˈkɑːnɪvl/: lễ hội (hóa trang)
4. ceremony (n) /ˈserəməni/: nghi lễ
5. clasp (v) /kləsp/: bắt tay
6. commemorate (v) /kəˈmeməreɪt/: kỉ niệm
7. command (n) /kəˈmɑːnd/: hiệu lệnh
8. companion (n) /kəmˈpæniən/: bạn đồng hành
9. defeat (v) /diˈfiːt/: đánh bại
10. emperor (n) /ˈempərə(r)/: đế chế



11. float (v) /fləʊt/: thả trôi nổi
12. gong (n) /gɒŋ/: cồng (nhạc cụ dân tộc)
13. rice flake (n) /raɪs fleɪk/: cốm
14. incense (n) /'ɪnsens/: hương, nhang
15. invader (n) /ɪn'veɪdə(r)/: kẻ xâm lược
16. joyful (adj) /'dʒɔɪfl/: vui vẻ
17. lantern (n) /'læntən/: đèn trời, đèn thả sông
18. offering (n) /'ɒfərɪŋ/: lễ vật
19. procession (n) /prə'seɪʃn/: đám rước
20. preserve (v) /prɪ'zɜ:v/: bảo tồn
21. ritual (n) /'rɪtʃuəl/: nghi thức (trong lễ hội, tôn giáo)
22. royal court music /'rɔɪəl kɔ:t 'mju:zɪk/: nhã nhạc cung đình
23. regret (v) /rɪ'ɡret/: hối hận
24. scenery (n) /'si:nəri/: cảnh quan
25. worship (v) /'wɜ:ʃɪp/: tôn thờ, thờ cúng ai

## B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### ÔN TẬP CÂU ĐƠN (SIMPLE SENTENCES)

|                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Định nghĩa</b> | Câu đơn là câu chỉ có 1 mệnh đề chính, gồm có 1 chủ ngữ và 1 động từ. Hoặc câu có thể có chủ ngữ là 2 danh từ nối bằng 'and' hoặc có 2 động từ nối bằng 'and' nhưng vẫn là 1 câu đơn.                                                          |
| <b>Ví dụ</b>      | <b>I went to the supermarket yesterday.</b> (Tôi đã đi đến siêu thị ngày hôm qua.)<br>Mary and Tom are playing tennis. (Mary và Tom đang chơi tennis.)<br>My brother ate a sandwich and drank beer. (Anh trai tôi đã ăn sandwich và uống bia.) |

### II. ÔN TẬP CÂU GHEP (COMPOUND SENTENCES)

#### 1. Định nghĩa và cấu trúc câu ghép

|                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Định nghĩa</b> | - Là câu có 2 hay nhiều mệnh đề độc lập về ý nghĩa.<br>- Được kết nối với nhau bởi một liên từ kết hợp hay còn gọi là liên từ đẳng lập như: and, or, but, so...                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Cấu trúc</b>   | Mệnh đề 1 + (,) + liên từ + mệnh đề 2.<br>Ví dụ:<br>You should eat less fast or you can put on weight. (Bạn nên ăn ít đồ ăn nhanh hơn hoặc bạn có thể tăng cân đấy.)<br>I wasn't very hungry, but I ate a lot. (Tôi không đói lắm, nhưng tôi đã ăn rất nhiều.)<br>My mother does exercise every day, so she looks very young and fit. (Mẹ tôi tập thể dục hàng ngày, vì vậy mà trông mẹ rất trẻ và khỏe.) |
| <b>Lưu ý</b>      | Chúng ta cần phải sử dụng dấu “,” trước liên từ so, con với các liên từ and/or/but thì có thể có dấu phẩy hoặc không.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

#### 2. Các liên từ kết hợp thường gặp

| Liên từ                                                                                    | Ví dụ                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| And(và): dùng để bổ sung thêm thông tin                                                    | (The Japanese eat a lot of fish, <b>and</b> they eat a lot of tofu too. (Người Nhật ăn rất nhiều cá, và họ cũng ăn rất nhiều đậu phụ nữa.) |
| Or(hoặc): dùng khi có sự lựa chọn                                                          | You can take this medicine, <b>or</b> you can drink hot ginger tea. (Con có thể uống thuốc này hoặc con có thể uống trà gừng nóng.)        |
| But (nhưng): dùng để nói 2 mệnh đề mang ý nghĩa trái ngược, đối lập nhau.                  | She doesn't eat much, <b>but</b> she's still fat. (Cô ấy không ăn nhiều, nhưng cô ấy vẫn béo.)                                             |
| So (nên/vì vậy mà/vậy nên): dùng để nói về một kết quả của sự việc được nhắc đến trước đó. | My mother eats healthily, <b>so</b> she is very strong.<br>(Mẹ tôi ăn uống rất lành mạnh, nên bà ấy rất khỏe.)                             |

## 1.Định nghĩa

[illegible]

|                             |                         |                           |                           |                          |                           |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| After<br>(sau khi)          | Although<br>(mặc dù)    | As<br>(bởi vì/khi)        | As if<br>(như thể là)     | As long as<br>(miễn là)  | In order to<br>(cố để mà) |
| Before<br>(trước khi)       | Even if<br>(mặc dù)     | Because<br>(bởi vì)       | As though<br>(như thể là) | As much as               | So that<br>(cố để mà)     |
| Once<br>(một khi)           | Even though<br>(mặc dù) | Whereas<br>(trong khi đó) | If<br>(nếu)               | As soon as<br>(ngay khi) | Unless<br>(trừ phi)       |
| Since<br>(kể từ khi/bởi vì) | Though<br>(mặc dù)      | While<br>(trong khi đó)   | In case<br>(phòng khi)    | When<br>(khi)            | Until<br>(cho đến khi)    |

Bài 1: Điền S (Simple) trước những câu đơn, điền C (compound) trước những câu ghép và CC (Complex) trước những câu phức.

- Bài 2: Khoanh tròn vào liên từ thích hợp để hoàn thành những câu ghép dưới đây.(and,or,but,so)**

- 74

2. This year the Mid-Autumn Festival falls on the next Sunday, \_\_\_\_\_ I can go home and reunite with my family.  
A. and                      B. or                      C. but                      D. so
3. I have never joined in a carnival, \_\_\_\_\_ I am very curious about it.  
A. and                      B. or                      C. but                      D. so
4. My mother is occupied in her job, \_\_\_\_\_ she tries to make time for me.  
A. and                      B. or                      C. but                      D. so
5. Do you want to join us \_\_\_\_\_ do you want to leave now?  
A. and                      B. or                      C. but                      D. so
6. I love cats, \_\_\_\_\_ my mother doesn't allow me to have one.  
A. and                      B. or                      C. but                      D. so
7. Mary wants to go abroad, \_\_\_\_\_ she saves money from now.  
A. and                      B. or                      C. but                      D. so
8. They used to be friends, \_\_\_\_\_ now they are not.  
A. and                      B. or                      C. but                      D. so
9. This event is held to commemorate the national heroes, \_\_\_\_\_ it teaches children to respect and be grateful to the heroes.  
A. and                      B. or                      C. but                      D. so
10. You can take a seat, \_\_\_\_\_ you can go around and take a look. It's up to you.  
A. and                      B. or                      C. but                      D. so

**Bài 3: Điền một liên từ thích hợp để hoàn thành những câu ghép sau.**

- My father wants me to become a doctor, \_\_\_\_\_ I want to become a designer.
- It is a challenging task \_\_\_\_\_ it takes me a lot of time to do it.
- Should I stay in and watch TV \_\_\_\_\_ should I hang out with friends today?
- There are many festivals in Vietnam \_\_\_\_\_ many of them are held in the spring.
- Did you stay at home last night \_\_\_\_\_ did you go out with your friends?
- I broke my glasses yesterday, \_\_\_\_\_ I didn't see things clearly.
- My brother doesn't socialize much, \_\_\_\_\_ he has very few friends.
- A new camera is all I want now, \_\_\_\_\_ I don't have enough money.
- Mary looks small and thin, \_\_\_\_\_ she owns great strength.
- I have many things to do tonight, \_\_\_\_\_ I reject my friend's invitation to her party.
- My computer is brand new, \_\_\_\_\_ I encounter some problems when I use it.
- This is a complex problem, \_\_\_\_\_ we need to work together to find the solution.
- Peter doesn't feel today, \_\_\_\_\_ he is absent from school.
- They thought they won the match, \_\_\_\_\_ it turned out that they were losers.
- My siblings and I don't share many similarities, \_\_\_\_\_ we are in harmony with each other.

**Bài 4: Nối hai câu đơn sau thành câu ghép.**

- My best friend is studying abroad. It is impossible for us to meet each other now.
- They are going to build a new bridge across this river. Traveling will be much more convenient.
- It has been ages since our last encounter. I still remember him clearly.
- I went down with flu last week. I had to postpone my work.
- I think the festival will be full of fun. Many people will enjoy it.
- Students can choose to carry out a project on environmental issues. They can conduct research on the topic of renewable energy.
- My mother started a business trip last week. She hasn't returned home yet.
- My brother has grown up into an adult. He still enjoys playing with Lego.

**Bài 5: Khoanh tròn vào liên từ thích hợp để hoàn thành những câu phức dưới đây.**

- It will be a great fortune (if/unless) I can join upcoming carnival.
- I will lend you my book (as long as/as soon as) you promise to keep it clean.
- I will call you (as long as/as soon as) I arrive there.
- (When/While) I came, Jim was having dinner.
- Catherine was shocked (when/until) she found out the truth.
- They have worked at this company (when/since) they graduated.
- At 8 pm last night, I was doing my homework (when/while) my sister was playing with her toys.



8. (Before/After) I had eaten my breakfast, I went to school by bus.
9. (Although/Despite) Mary looks thinner than me, she is much stronger than me.
10. They didn't come to the party (since/as soon as) they were too busy.
11. You should bring your raincoat (unless/in case) it rains.
12. I didn't realize her new hair (when/until) she told me.
13. I won't accept this job (even if/if) the offer me high salary.
14. My father will buy me a book (even though/as long as) I pass the exam.
15. I like her (when/even though) she's annoying sometimes.

**Bài 6: Nối những mệnh đề ở cột A với cột B để tạo thành một câu ghép hoàn chỉnh.**

| A                                     | B                                          |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 1. They won't let you in              | a. he failed to persuade her.              |
| 2. They were having a small talk      | b. once I have enough money to buy one.    |
| 3. Even though he tried his best,     | c. until I pointed it out for him.         |
| 4. Jame didn't realize his fault      | d. unless you have the invitation letter.  |
| 5. Although Sarah can sing very well, | e. when I came in the room.                |
| 6. Today Peter doesn't attend class   | f. when you visit temples or pagodas.      |
| 7. I will move to a bigger apartment  | g. as he is suffering from a headache.     |
| 8. You shouldn't wear short skirts    | h. she rarely performs in front of people. |

- 1- \_\_\_\_\_ 2- \_\_\_\_\_ 3- \_\_\_\_\_ 4- \_\_\_\_\_  
5- \_\_\_\_\_ 6- \_\_\_\_\_ 7- \_\_\_\_\_ 8- \_\_\_\_\_

**Bài 7: Điền những liên từ cho sẵn vào chỗ trống để hoàn thành những câu phức dưới đây.**

|             |           |       |           |       |
|-------------|-----------|-------|-----------|-------|
| whereas     | unless x2 | since | before x2 | if x2 |
| even though |           | while |           |       |

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Jame is my friend, I can't accept his arrogance.
2. My brother is a bookworm, \_\_\_\_\_ I don't like reading books.
3. At midnight, my parents were sleeping \_\_\_\_\_ I was cramming for exams.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ you have any questions, you ask me after the lesson.
5. We won't go camping \_\_\_\_\_ the weather is fine.
6. You shouldn't skip classes \_\_\_\_\_ you really have to.
7. What did you do \_\_\_\_\_ you went to bed last night?
8. In some cultures, you have to pray \_\_\_\_\_ you eat.
9. We are very familiar with this areas \_\_\_\_\_ we moved here 15 years ago.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ you travel from the North to the South of Vietnam, you will experience many interesting customs.

**Bài 8: Viết lại hai câu đơn thành một câu phức.**

1. Dog is my favorite animal. They are good companions of people.
2. I don't like jazz. A friend of mine is a fan of it.
3. They were stuck in the traffic for hours. They managed to get there on time.
4. I came to the party. Everyone was leaving.
5. This time Jane works very hard. She doesn't want to fail the exam again.
6. I seldom do exercises. I doing exercises is good for health.
7. My computer is old-fashioned. It functions very smoothly.
8. I didn't know her real name. People always called her by her nickname.

#### ■ BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NĂNG CAO

**Bài 9: Đánh dấu [V] trước câu đúng. Đánh dấu [X] trước câu trả lời sai và sửa lại cho đúng.**

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. I love the Mid-Autumn festival. Since there are a variety of interesting activities during the festival.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. While the Mid-Autumn festival is also called "Children's festival" in Vietnam, it is enjoyed by people of all ages.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. On this special occasion, family members often reunite and celebrate the festival.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Many people choose to go out and enjoy the exciting atmosphere, however others want to stay in and have time with their family.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The festival is held on the 15<sup>th</sup> day of the 8<sup>th</sup> month of the lunar calendar when the full moon.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Moon cakes are very important as if making and sharing moon cakes is the hallmark tradition of this festival.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. In Chinese culture, a round shape symbolizes completeness and reunion so the eating of round moon cakes among family members signifies the unity of families.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Unless you visit Vietnam in autumn, you should join in this special festival.

**Bài 10: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết câu ghép hoàn chỉnh với các liên từ “and, so, but”.**

1. I/visit/my neighbors/yesterday/no one/be/home.
2. They/recently/buy/new/house/they/throw/party/tomorrow.
3. You/face/a lot of/difficulties/in the future/career/you/should/never/give/up.
4. You/like/cup/of/coffee/you/like/glass/of/water?
5. Mr. Smith/seem/nice/man/he/be/selfish.
6. Mr. Brown/be/dedicated/teacher/many people/respect/him.
7. My students/be/hard-working/and/well-behaved/I not/have to/worry/much/about/them.
8. Ann/want/lose/weight/she/go/the gym/regularly.
9. The new radio/cost/me/a lot of/money/its/quality/br/poor.
10. This movie/be/praised/by/critics/I/not/really/like/it.

**Bài 11: Điền liên từ thích hợp vào ô trống để hoàn thành những câu sau:**

1. They haven't eaten anything since the morning \_\_\_\_\_ they were too busy to eat.
2. James is very excited now \_\_\_\_\_ he is going abroad next month.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ it may be very challenging for you to do it, you can give it a try.
4. I was going home yesterday \_\_\_\_\_ I came across my old friend.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ you often an apology to Jane, she won't forgive you.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Smith doesn't like traditional folk songs, he rarely listen to them.
7. Will you hang out with your friends \_\_\_\_\_ will you reunite with your family on the Mid-Autumn festival?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ you want to visit a foreign country, you have to apply for a visa first.
9. Tony has lived in Vietnam for 2 years, \_\_\_\_\_ he doesn't know much about the country's festival.
10. Normally our family prefers staying at home and having dinner together on weekends, \_\_\_\_\_ this week we want to do something else.

**TEST 1 UNIT 5**

**I. Find the word which has different sound in the part underlined.**

1. A. mention      B. question      C. action      D. education

- |                        |                    |                     |                      |
|------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 2. A. <u>populated</u> | B. <u>loaded</u>   | C. <u>harvested</u> | D. <u>lived</u>      |
| 3. A. <u>community</u> | B. <u>computer</u> | C. <u>museum</u>    | D. <u>customs</u>    |
| 4. A. <u>minority</u>  | B. <u>ethnic</u>   | C. <u>tradition</u> | D. <u>religion</u>   |
| 5. A. <u>festival</u>  | B. <u>man</u>      | C. <u>fat</u>       | D. <u>grand</u>      |
| 6. A. <u>upset</u>     | B. <u>custom</u>   | C. <u>museum</u>    | D. <u>unsuitable</u> |
| 7. A. <u>saint</u>     | B. <u>taylor</u>   | C. <u>explain</u>   | D. <u>said</u>       |
| 8. A. <u>beach</u>     | B. <u>catch</u>    | C. <u>church</u>    | D. <u>Christmas</u>  |

**II. Choose the words that have the different stress from the others.**

- |                   |               |               |                |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. incense     | B. ritual     | C. preserve   | D. fortune     |
| 2. A. scenery     | B. invader    | C. childhood  | D. archway     |
| 3. A. historian   | B. speciality | C. oriental   | D. preparation |
| 4. A. belonging   | B. fisherman  | C. procession | D. performance |
| 5. A. commemorate | B. companion  | C. reunion    | D. ceremony    |

**III. Choose the best answer.**

- You should \_\_\_\_\_ information about a custom or tradition.  
A. finds                      B. found                      C. finding                      D. find
- A custom is something that has become an \_\_\_\_\_ way of doing things.  
A. to be accept              B. to accept                      C. accepting                      D. accepted
- In the UK, there are lots of customs for table manners. For example, we \_\_\_\_\_ use a knife and fork at dinner.  
A. have to                      B. are having                      C. has to                      D. having to
- In Viet Nam, you \_\_\_\_\_ use only the first name to address people older than you.  
A. should                      B. must                      C. shouldn't                      D. have to
- At the Mid-Autumn Festival, kids can sing, dance, and enjoy moon-cakes. \_\_\_\_\_, every child likes it very much.  
A. However                      B. Moreover                      C. Because                      D. Therefore
- In 2010, Ha Noi \_\_\_\_\_ its 1000<sup>th</sup> anniversary.  
A. celebrated                      B. commemorated                      C. worshipped                      D. remembered
- Tet is an occasion for family \_\_\_\_\_ in Viet Nam.  
A. visitings                      B. meeting                      C. reunions                      D. seeings
- \_\_\_\_\_ spring comes, many Vietnamese villages prepare for a new festival season.  
A. While                      B. When                      C. Nevertheless                      D. However
- This is the first time she \_\_\_\_\_ rice paddies.  
A. will see                      B. sees                      C. has seen                      D. saw
- Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ I borrowed your dictionary?  
A. if                      B. when                      C. that                      D. Ø
- Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ the window?  
A. to close                      B. closing                      C. about closing                      D. closed
- Welcome \_\_\_\_\_ Springfield!  
A. at                      B. to                      C. in                      D. for
- Accommodation in London \_\_\_\_\_ very expensive.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. has                      D. have
- The road \_\_\_\_\_ down to the sea is very rough.  
A. goes                      B. going                      C. to go                      D. gone
- Do you mind \_\_\_\_\_ here for just a minute?  
A. to wait                      B. waiting                      C. about waiting                      D. waited
- It was late, so we decided \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi home.

- A. take                      B. to take                      C. taking                      D. took
17. The council should be able to help families who have no accommodation.  
A. a place to live                      B. a place to watch sport matches  
C. a place to buy meal and eat it                      D. a place to work
18. Presents \_\_\_\_\_ in colored paper and put under the Christmas tree.  
A. are wrapped                      B. are wrap                      C. are wraped                      D. are wrapping
19. Tom likes \_\_\_\_\_. He spends lots of hours watching the birds.  
A. bird-watching                      B. bird-watch                      C. watch-bird                      D. watching-bird
20. Sally is quite keen \_\_\_\_\_ the idea.  
A. in                      B. on                      C. of                      D. for
21. Could you talk \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. more quiet                      B. quieter                      C. quietlier                      D. more quietly
22. I thanked my classmate \_\_\_\_\_ helping me with my homework.  
A. for                      B. about                      C. of                      D. Ø
23. Anita is fond \_\_\_\_\_ playing the piano.  
A. in                      B. on                      C. of                      D. for
24. The fire is made \_\_\_\_\_ matches or lighters. It is made in the traditional way.  
A. with                      B. without                      C. of                      D. by
25. Ten countries **participated in** the discussions.  
A. took part in                      B. held                      C. went to                      D. arranged
26. The \_\_\_\_\_ festival was held in the communal house yard.  
A. rice-cook                      B. rice-cooker                      C. rice-cooking                      D. rice-cooked
27. I \_\_\_\_\_ that I didn't know what to do.  
A. said                      B. told                      C. asked                      D. suggested

#### IV. Give the correct form of the following verbs

1. My mother always tells me that I have to \_\_\_\_\_ home by 9 p.m. (be)
2. When I came, the whole family \_\_\_\_\_ dinner around a big dinning table. (have)
3. Children should \_\_\_\_\_ things from adults with both hands. (take)
4. In Australia, you mustn't \_\_\_\_\_ on a person's accent. (comment)
5. Laura lives in a big city. If she \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in the country, she \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a dog.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) Italian for the past three years.
7. If I were you, I \_\_\_\_\_ (not / buy) that book.
8. What the children \_\_\_\_\_ (see) in the zoo yesterday?
9. They prefer \_\_\_\_\_ (play) in a swimming pool all day.
10. The doctor will be ready in ten minutes. Take a seat while you \_\_\_\_\_. (wait)

#### V. Choose the option that best fits each of the blank spaces.

Tet is a national and (1) \_\_\_\_\_ festival in Vietnam. It is an occasion for every Vietnamese to be reunited to think (2) \_\_\_\_\_ their past activities and hope for good luck (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the year to come.

Before Tet all houses are white washed and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ with yellow apricot flowers and colorful lanterns. Everybody is looking (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to a more favorable life. (6) \_\_\_\_\_ the New Year's Eve, children are smartly dressed. They are hoping to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ money put in small red envelopes as they are wishing longevity to their grandparents and parents. Wrong doings (8) \_\_\_\_\_ be absolutely avoided on these days.

- |                   |              |               |              |
|-------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. A. traditional | B. modern    | C. music      | D. summer    |
| 2. A. to          | B. about     | C. after      | D. for       |
| 3. A. in          | B. at        | C. on         | D. when      |
| 4. A. decorate    | B. decorates | C. decorating | D. decorated |
| 5. A. at          | B. for       | C. after      | D. forward   |
| 6. A. In          | B. At        | C. On         | D. When      |
| 7. A. receive     | B. buy       | C. sell       | D. make      |
| 8. A. ought       | B. need      | C. should     | D. have      |

**VI. Read and complete the passage with words in the box.**

|         |           |           |             |
|---------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| spring  | kept      | celebrate | traditional |
| Because | Therefore | served    | However     |

Tet is the biggest festival in Vietnam. To (1) \_\_\_\_\_ Tet, Vietnamese people make many tasty (2) \_\_\_\_\_ foods. The most important food includes **Chung** cakes, sausages, boiled chicken, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ rolls, and sticky rice. Chung cake is made of sticky rice, pork, green beans, and other spices, wrapped in green leaves; (4) \_\_\_\_\_ this cake needs a lot of preparation. This cake can be (5) \_\_\_\_\_ for a long time, even though the weather is often humid during Tet. Other significant foods that cannot be missed to worship the ancestors are sausages, spring rolls, and sticky rice. (6) \_\_\_\_\_ sausages are difficult to make, people often buy them from famous suppliers. (7) \_\_\_\_\_, sticky rice and spring rolls are easier to prepare and must be (8) \_\_\_\_\_ immediately after they are cooked, so they are often made at home.

**VII. Read the passage and answer these questions below.**

TET holiday is celebrated on the first day of the Lunar New Year in Viet Nam. Some weeks before the New Year, the Vietnamese clean their houses and paint the walls. New clothes are bought for the occasion. One or two days before the festival, people make *Bank Chung*, which is the traditional cake, and kinds of jam. On the New Year's Eve, the whole family gets together for a reunion dinner. Every member of the family should be present during the dinner in which many different kinds of dishes are served. On the New Year morning, the young member of the family pays their respects to the elders. And the children receive lucky money wrapped in red tiny envelops. Then people go to visit their neighbors, friends and relatives.

1. Is TET holiday celebrated on the second day of the Lunar New Year in Viet Nam?

2. What do the Vietnamese often do some weeks before the New Year?

3. Who do people often visit on TET holiday?

4. How many kinds of dishes are served in the reunion dinner?

**VIII. Choose the option that best fits each of the blank spaces.**

Harvest Festival is (1) \_\_\_\_\_ October. It is a very ancient (2) \_\_\_\_\_ but it is also a part of the Christian tradition. It (3) \_\_\_\_\_ new crops and food. Children often bring fruit, vegetables and cereals into school. Schools usually give the food to hospitals or to old people. (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the past, people sometimes (5) \_\_\_\_\_ traditional dolls out of corn.

- |             |             |             |            |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. A. in    | B. at       | C. on       | D. from    |
| 2. A. thing | B. festival | C. vacation | D. holiday |

- |             |               |               |          |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|----------|
| 3. A. gives | B. supplies   | C. celebrates | D. holds |
| 4. A. In    | B. At         | C. On         | D. Since |
| 5. A. make  | B. are making | C. making     | D. made  |

**IX. Read the following passage and choose the best answers to each of the questions below.**

Hi! I'm Dean. I'm from England. My favorite time of the year is Christmas, which is on 25<sup>th</sup> December. That's when Christians celebrate the birth of Christ. In the middle of December we send a lot of cards to our friends and family, here and abroad. Then we get a big tree and **decorate** it with lights and other things. On Christmas Day, we give each other presents. We have one enormous meal with turkey, and after that, we have Christmas pudding.

- When is Christmas held?
 

|                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| A. On 25 December            | B. In the middle of December |
| C. In the middle of the year | D. no information            |
- Christmas is held because Christians want to \_\_\_\_\_.
 

|                                   |                                  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| A. have a good time               | B. celebrate the birth of Christ |
| C. visit their friends and family | D. decorate big trees            |
- What does the word '**decorate**' in line 4 mean?
 

|                              |                    |
|------------------------------|--------------------|
| A. make something look nicer | B. paint something |
| C. make something look worse | D. buy something   |
- On Christmas Day, people \_\_\_\_\_.
 

|                             |                                      |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| A. give each other presents | B. have an enormous meal with turkey |
| C. have Christmas pudding   | D. all answers are correct           |
- Which of the following is not true?
 

|                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A. Dean is English.                                                                             |
| B. At Christmas, people get big trees and decorate it.                                          |
| C. Dean prefers Halloween to Christmas.                                                         |
| D. In the middle of December, people send a lot of Christmas cards to their friends and family. |

**X. Identify a mistake in each sentence and correct it.**

- In Australia, you mustn't to comment on a person's accent.  
.....
- In my family, children has to get permission before leaving the dining table.  
.....
- When I came, the whole family is having dinner around a big dining table.  
.....
- Lang Lieu couldn't buy any special food while he was very poor.  
.....

**XI. Combine each pair of sentences to make one sentence, using the words given in brackets.**

- Lang Lieu couldn't buy any special food. He was very poor. (**because**)  
.....
- During Tet, Vietnamese people buy all kinds of sweets. They make Chung cakes as well. (**so**)  
.....
- The Hung King Temple Festival was a local festival. It has become a public holiday in Viet Nam since 2007. (**however**)  
.....
- At the Mid-Autumn Festival, kids can sing, dance, and enjoy mooncakes. Every child likes it very much. (**therefore**)  
.....
- The water is highly polluted. We cannot swim in this part of the river. (**because**)  
.....
- Mr. Minh is admired. He dedicates all his life to protecting environment. (**since**)  
.....

**TEST 2 (UNIT 5)**

**I. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.**

- |                     |                |                  |                 |
|---------------------|----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. concentration | B. composition | C. consideration | D. conversation |
|---------------------|----------------|------------------|-----------------|



- |                   |               |                |                 |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 2. A.coordination | B.depression  | C.donation     | D.erection      |
| 3. A.foundation   | B.location    | C.organization | D.performance   |
| 4. A.attention    | B.recognition | C.contribution | D.animation     |
| 5. A.consumption  | B.explosion   | C.technician   | D.mathematician |
| 6. A.magician     | B.historian   | C.musician     | D.vegetarian    |
| 7. A.librarian    | B.physician   | C.Brazilian    | D.Indonesia     |
| 8. A.civilian     | B.grammarian  | C.politician   | D.Shakespearian |

**II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.**

- |                    |                   |                   |                  |
|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. A. malnutrition | B. prohibition    | C. recommendation | D. superstitious |
| 2. A. application  | B. congratulation | C. recreation     | D. education     |
| 3. A. exhaustion   | B. maintenance    | C. opinion        | D. pollution     |
| 4. A. reduction    | B. competition    | C. objection      | D. appearance    |
| 5. A. comparison   | B. organization   | C. communication  | D. socialization |

**III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.**

6. \_\_\_\_\_ different regions and religions have a variety in marital arrangements, the arranged marriage is a traditional feature of every community.  
 A. Because      B. Although      C. While      D. When
7. The Vietnamese are influenced by Buddhist theology and Confucian philosophy, \_\_\_\_\_ they believe in fate in marriage..  
 A. and      B. but      C. so      D. yet
8. Always take your shoes off before you enter a temple in India, \_\_\_\_\_ you will be considered impolite.  
 A. otherwise      B. therefore      C. however      D. moreover
9. "GiaoThua" is the most sacred time of the year; \_\_\_\_\_, the first houseguest to offer the first greeting is very important.  
 A. moreover      B. nevertheless      C. so      D. therefore
10. The five-fruit tray on the altar symbolizes the gratitude of the Vietnamese to their ancestors; \_\_\_\_\_, it demonstrates their hope for a life of plenty.  
 A. and      B. moreover      C. therefore      D. however
11. The Hung King Temple Festival \_\_\_\_\_ from the 8<sup>th</sup> to the 11<sup>th</sup> day of the third lunar month in PhuTho.  
 A. takes      B. takes part      C. takes place      D. takes turn
12. During the Buddhist Festival, visitors join the procession and make offerings to \_\_\_\_\_ Buddha at the pagoda.  
 A. think about      B. consider      C. worship      D. believe
13. I think the Kate Festival is a really joyful festival which \_\_\_\_\_ many activities.  
 A. contains      B. holds      C. features      D. includes in
14. In Viet Nam, the \_\_\_\_\_ we mostly use is chopsticks.  
 A. cut      B. cutting      C. cutlery      D. cutlet
15. You shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ your promise to the children.  
 A. break      B. cut      C. keep      D. save

**IV. \_\_\_\_\_ Fill in the blanks with the correct verbs from the box. Maybe some questions can have more than one answer.**

|                |                   |                    |                  |
|----------------|-------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| <i>honour</i>  | <i>perform</i>    | <i>commemorate</i> | <i>celebrate</i> |
| <i>worship</i> | <i>symbolizes</i> | <i>pray</i>        | <i>hold</i>      |

1. On New Year's Eve, in front of the altar, people \_\_\_\_\_ for health and luck in the New Year.
2. Mid-Autumn Festival is held on 15<sup>th</sup> day of the eighth lunar month to \_\_\_\_\_ the biggest full moon in the year.
3. To express their gratitude, villagers from Le Mat village built a temple to \_\_\_\_\_ the man who saved the princess and made their region wealthy as well as adding catching snakes to their career.

4. To \_\_\_\_\_ the event when An Duong Vuong started moving into the citadel, residents of 12 hamlets belonging to Co Loa held Co Loa Citadel Festival within a 10-day period.
5. "Che Troi Nuoc", a special dessert consisting of a sweet soup with round balls made from rice and sugar sauce, \_\_\_\_\_ reunion.
6. Ba Na villagers \_\_\_\_\_ the Village Land Praying Ceremony in preparation for the new crop or before moving to new land.
7. During the Trung Sisters Temple Festival, villagers \_\_\_\_\_ folk games and artistic events, such as dragon and lion dancing, *cheo* singing, wrestling competition, swinging, etc.
8. Taking place on the third lunar month in Truong Yen Commune, Ninh Binh Province, Hoa Lu Festival is celebrated to \_\_\_\_\_ the Kings Dinh Tien Hoang and Le Dai Hanh.

V. Fill in each blank with one suitable subordinate from the box.

|              |                |                 |                 |
|--------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>and</i>   | <i>but</i>     | <i>so</i>       | <i>when</i>     |
| <i>while</i> | <i>because</i> | <i>although</i> | <i>moreover</i> |

#### International Kite Festival in Vung Tau

Vung Tau has become a familiar tourist destination to many people (1) \_\_\_\_\_ it has its own beautiful beaches and mountains. (2) \_\_\_\_\_, Vung Tau even has more to offer. International Kite Festival in Vung Tau, first held in 2009, is the biggest Kite Festival in Viet Nam. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the festival is still new, it has attracted kite artisans all around the world such as France, Australia, the UK, US, Cambodia, Malaysia, the Philippines, etc.

The festival may take place in various tourist sites, (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the events are in the same order. (5) \_\_\_\_\_ you come to Vung Tau during the first days of summer, you can enjoy the colourful sky with kites from skillful hands of artisans around the world. (6) \_\_\_\_\_ kites from other countries are in different styles, Viet Nam showed up kites of Hue Royal styles in shape of a phoenix or a dragon. In 2009, the clubs from Hue had traditional (7) \_\_\_\_\_ most diversified kites. (8) \_\_\_\_\_ they were awarded special prizes.

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

#### Kate Festival

Kate Festival is (1) \_\_\_\_\_ by the Cham people for 3 days at the beginning of October. This event is held in a large space in the three Champa Towers (Po Nagar, Po Klong Garai and Po Rome). The main purpose of the festival is to (2) \_\_\_\_\_ their heroes like Po Klong Garai and Po Rome. (3) \_\_\_\_\_, the festival is the chance for the local people to relax, to meet and wish one another (4) \_\_\_\_\_ in the future.

This is one of the biggest and most important events of the Cham people in Vietnam. (5) \_\_\_\_\_ it is a good opportunity for the visitors to explore the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ in the Cham culture, from architecture to costumes, instruments and traditional songs that are used to praise their kings in the past. The Kate festival in each tower starts at the same time, and the day after, villagers and families begin to hold their own rites. During the rites, the people (7) \_\_\_\_\_ their ancestors and gods with the help of a shaman, and then pray (8) \_\_\_\_\_ health and prosperity. The actual festival (9) \_\_\_\_\_ after the rites. It is a combination of traditional music and dance, including some activities (10) \_\_\_\_\_ performances of Ginang Drum and Saranai Flute or the traditional dance of Cham girls.

- |                   |                 |              |                   |
|-------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. organize    | B. organized    | C. hold      | D. being held     |
| 2. A. commemorate | B. see          | C. watch     | D. love           |
| 3. A. However     | B. Nevertheless | C. Therefore | D. Moreover       |
| 4. A. lucky       | B. happy        | C. fortune   | D. dream          |
| 5. A. However     | B. Therefore    | C. Because   | D. Although       |
| 6. A. beautiful   | B. beautifully  | C. charm     | D. charming       |
| 7. A. call        | B. ask          | C. shout     | D. speak          |
| 8. A. to          | B. about        | C. of        | D. for            |
| 9. A. take place  | B. take places  | C. take part | D. take the place |
| 10. A. such       | B. so           | C. like      | D. like as        |

VII. Read the passage about Chol Chnam Thmay Festival, and do the tasks that follow.  
Chol Chnam Thmay Festival

This holiday is the New Year festival in ancient calendar of Khmer people. Held in mid-April, the festival occurs in 3 days (4 days for the leap year). People prepare new clothes, food and drinks for whole festival days. They also repair, clean and decorate their house. Everyone is excited to care for holiday.

At night of New Year's Eve, every family prepares a lavish meal, burns incense and candles to welcome the new god, farewell the old god. On the altar, they present 5 flower branches, 5 candles, 5 incense, 5 cereal seeds and fruit crops. They pray for health and luck in the New Year.

On the first New Year - Cholsangkranchmay, major activities are bathing, dressing nice, bringing sacrifice gifts to the temple in good time which has been selected.

On Wonbof day - the second day, they make rice offerings and cover the sand mountain. People cook rice and bring it to the temple in the morning and the afternoon.

On LomSak day - the third day, they do Buddha bathing and monk-bathing ceremony. In the morning, people bring breakfast to monks and listen to the sermon. At noon, they burn the lamps, offer sacrifice gifts and bring fragrant water to bathe Buddha statues. After the ceremony at the temple, the monks go to the grave to pray for the souls of those who died.

**Task 1: Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.**

| Answer | A                 | B                                                                |
|--------|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| _____  | 1. lavish (adj)   | A. to speak to a god to give thanks or to ask for something      |
| _____  | 2. farewell (v)   | B. a speech on a religious matter                                |
| _____  | 3. monk (n)       | C. large in amount or number                                     |
| _____  | 4. sermon (n)     | D. having a pleasant smell                                       |
| _____  | 5. fragrant (adj) | E. say goodbye                                                   |
| _____  | 6. pray (v)       | F. a man who has decided to live a religious life in a community |

**Task 2: Read the passage again, and then answer the following questions.**

7. What is the festival?

8. When is it held? And how long does it last?

9. What do people prepare to celebrate the festival?

10. How do Khmer people prepare the altar at night of New Year's Eve?

11. What do people do on the first New Year Day?

12. When do people cook rice and bring it to the temple?

13. When do they do Buddha bathing and monk-bathing ceremony?

14. What do the monks do after doing Buddha bathing and monk-bathing ceremony?

**VIII.. Complete each blank in the following passage about *Vu Lan Festival* with the correct linking word from the box. Some words may be used more than once. (There may be more than one possibility).**

|                 |                  |             |              |
|-----------------|------------------|-------------|--------------|
| <i>and</i>      | <i>because</i>   | <i>when</i> | <i>then</i>  |
| <i>moreover</i> | <i>therefore</i> | <i>if</i>   | <i>first</i> |

#### ***Vu Lan Festival***

Vu Lan Festival takes place on 15th day of the seventh lunar month. It is also called "Xatoivongnhan" festival (1)\_\_\_\_\_ this is the day for the death's souls. Many people believe that on that day, (2)\_\_\_\_\_ the gate of the hell opens, souls of the dead can come back to their home (3)\_\_\_\_\_ gather with their family. (4)\_\_\_\_\_, Vietnamese people consider that it is also the occasion for family gatherings as well as expressing love (5)\_\_\_\_\_ gratitude to ancestors and parents. (6)\_\_\_\_\_ Vu Lan Festival is known as Mother's Day in Viet Nam.

(7)\_\_\_\_\_, in the morning of that day, a lavish tray with various delicious dishes is set on the altar, and the householder will burn incense and invite ancestor to come back home and celebrate the festival with family. (8)\_\_\_\_\_ at night the Vietnamese hold a ceremony of releasing lighted lanterns on the

river, (9)\_\_\_\_\_ Vietnamese people believe by doing that, their wishes for parents will come true.

Pagoda are crowded during the festival day (10)\_\_\_\_\_ Buddhists gather for the monk's lecture. Each Buddhist has a flower (usually rose) in front of their chest: red flower (11)\_\_\_\_\_ their parents are living and white flower (12)\_\_\_\_\_ their parents are dead.

**IX. Read the passage about Mid-Autumn Festival, and do the tasks that follow.**

**Mid-Autumn Festival**

Mid-Autumn Festival is held on 15<sup>th</sup> day of the eighth lunar month to celebrate biggest full moon in the year. In Viet Nam, this festival is for children (1)\_\_\_\_\_ children are center of all activities on that day. (2)\_\_\_\_\_ the festival is coming, the adults and the parents prepare many different foods -moon cakes, candies, biscuits, jellies, and fruit. (3)\_\_\_\_\_, the children are given many nice lanterns star lanterns, flower lanterns and diverse funny masks, (4)\_\_\_\_\_ they can light the lanterns during the Mid-Autumn night.

(5)\_\_\_\_\_ the autumn is the time of the beginning of the new school year, the adults and parents give gifts to the children. The festival takes place (6)\_\_\_\_\_ people have had good crops. (7)\_\_\_\_\_, it is also the congratulation for the full harvest.

Nowadays, (8)\_\_\_\_\_ some of the traditional toys have been replaced by modern toys, the meaning of the festival has been kept and developed. It is certain that Mid-Autumn Festival is a good example of the traditional culture of the Vietnamese

**Task 1: Complete each blank in the passage with the correct linking word. (There may be more than one possibility.)**

**Task 2: Read the passage again, and then answer the following questions.**

9. When is Mid-Autumn Festival held? What is it for?

\_\_\_\_\_

10. What do the adults and the parents do to prepare for the festival?

\_\_\_\_\_

11. What are children given besides moon cakes?

\_\_\_\_\_

12. What can children do with their lanterns?

\_\_\_\_\_

13. Why is Mid-Autumn Festival also considered the congratulation for the full harvest?

\_\_\_\_\_

14. What is the importance of this festival?

**X. Connect each pair of sentences, using the conjunction or conjunctive adverb given in brackets.**

1. The establishment of the club of Xoan singing in Phu Tho has brought new energy and strength. Villagers in these communes give great contribution to the development of the clubs. **(while)**

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Valentine Day is not very popular in Viet Nam. People in big cities send gifts on that day. **(yet)**

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Flower buds and blossoms are the symbols for new beginning. These two distinctive flowers are widely sold and purchased during Tet. **(because)**

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Homes are often cleaned and decorated before New Year's Eve. The kitchen needs to be cleaned before the 23<sup>rd</sup> night of the last month. **(and)**

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Street vendors rush into the city center with peach trees on their bicycles. The streets look like moving pink forests. **(when)**

---

---

**XI. Connect each pair of sentences, using the conjunction or conjunctive adverb given in brackets.**

1. On New Year' Eve, the Vietnamese put fruits on the altar. They also arrange watermelons, and traditional cakes such as *chung* cakes. **(and)**

---

---

2. Many people go to pagodas or churches on New Year's Day to pray for the coming year. Many others remain in their home in front of the altar to welcome the ancestors through prayer. **(while)**

---

---

3. \_\_\_\_\_ Peo  
ple from Western countries do not follow ancestor worship. Ancestor worship is considered a type of religious practices in some Asian countries. **(although)**

---

---

4. \_\_\_\_\_ Xoa  
n singing is still in the memory of folk artists in Phu Tho Province. They always try their best to hand down offspring the old style of singing in the activities of the clubs. **(because)**

---

---

**XII. Make sentences about King Hung Temple Festival, using the words and phrases given. You can add some words and make changes.**

**King Hung Temple Festival**

1. King Hung Temple Festival/ take place/ yearly/ King Hung Temple/ the 8<sup>th</sup>/ 11<sup>th</sup> day/ the third lunar month.

---

---

2. During the festival/ Vietnamese people/ go/ King Hung Temple/Nghia Linh Mountain, Phu Tho Province/ take part/ this festival.

---

---

3. The festival/ feature/ many folk games/ bamboo swings/ rice cooking competitions/ lion dance/ human chess/ water puppet performance/ wrestling/ crossbow shooting, etc.

---

---

4. the 10th day/ a national ceremony/ held/ participation/ about 40 villages.

---

---

5. Governmental leaders/ will lead/ procession/ up/ Upper Temple.

---

---

6. There a ceremony/ offering incense/ five-fruit trays/ and specialties/*chung* cakes/*day* cakes/ which/ two traditional foods/ Vietnam.

---

---

**XIII. Make sentences about the Giong Festival, using the words and phrases given. You can add some words and make changes.**

1. The Giong Festival/ held/ the 6<sup>th</sup>/ the 12<sup>th</sup>/ the 4<sup>th</sup> lunar month/ several venues around Ha Noi.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. The festival/ commemorate/ Saint Giong/ who/ defeat/ the An.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. It/ also/ an opportunity/ hope for abundant harvests/ happy lives/ and express patriotism.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. During/ festival/ villagers/ the statue bathing/ processions bamboo flowers/ Soc Temple.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The festival/ provided/ many entertaining activities/ including/ folk games/ traditional singing performances.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The festival/ recognized/ UNESCO/ as an intangible cultural heritage/ mankind.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**TEST 3 UNIT 5**

**I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.**

1. a. lantern                      b. invader                      c. nation                      d. race
2. a. carnival                      b. command                      c. ceremony                      d. encourage
3. a. tradition                      b. question                      c. procession                      d. preservation
4. a. performed                      b. worshipped                      c. prayed                      d. offered
5. a. sound                      b. crowd                      c. found                      d. court

**II. Choose the word whose main stress pattern is placed differently.**

1. a. confusion                      b. magician                      c. important                      d. otherwise
2. a. performance                      b. nevertheless                      c. however                      d. procession
3. a. preserve                      b. fortune                      c. ritual                      d. lantern
4. a. reunion                      b. bamboo                      c. festival                      d. display
5. a. participate                      b. politician                      c. communicate                      d. commemorate

**III. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.**

1. Tet is a best time for Vietnamese people paying respects \_\_\_\_\_ their ancestors.  
a. for                      b. to                      c. with                      d. on
2. Tran Temple Festival is held \_\_\_\_\_ the 15th day of the first lunar month.  
a. in                      b. for                      c. at                      d. on
3. Ghe Ngo Race is a religious ritual of the Khmer to \_\_\_\_\_ the Snake God Nagar.  
a. commemorate                      b. preserve                      c. command                      d. process
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Vietnam has been influenced by Buddhism for thousands of years, there are plenty of Buddhist pilgrimage sites.  
A. When                      b. Although                      c. If                      d. As
5. Originally, Tet was celebrated by farmers to thank the gods for the arrival of Spring. \_\_\_\_\_, through the years, Tet has turned into the official Vietnamese New Year.  
a. Otherwise                      b. Therefore                      c. However                      d. Moreover
6. \_\_\_\_\_ do you visit Huong Pagoda? - Every year. On the 5th day of the first lunar month.  
a. When                      b. How often                      c. How long                      d. What day
7. On the 13th day of the first lunar month, the visitors come to Lim Hill to watch \_\_\_\_\_ of "quan ho".  
a. performances                      b. features                      c. ceremonies                      d. processions
8. Perfume Pagoda is famous not only for its scenic landscape \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. or also for its sacredness                      b. and for its sacredness as well  
c. but also for its sacredness                      d. and yet for its sacredness
9. \_\_\_\_\_ graduate a semester early, I took three extra classes.



- a. Although I was determined to                      b. Because I was determined to  
c. If I was determined to                              d. While I was determined to
10. 'I was wondering if you'd like to go to Da Lat Flower Festival'  
'\_\_\_\_\_ When does it take place?'
- a. Not bad!                      b. Are you sure?                      c. For what?                      d. Sure, I'd love to!

**IV. Choose the best answer to complete the sentences.**

1. Mid-Autumn Festival not only recalls the family love, \_\_\_\_\_ is also a festival for both children and adults in Vietnam.  
a. and                      b. but                      c. yet                      d. therefore
2. Tran Temple Festival lasts from the 15th-20th of lunar August. \_\_\_\_\_, visitors all over the country eagerly go on a pilgrimage far prior to the day.  
a. Nevertheless                      b. Otherwise                      c. Therefore                      d. Moreover
3. \_\_\_\_\_ the main worship event is taking place at Hung Temple, 100 lanterns are released into the sky.  
a. Because                      b. Even though                      c. While                      d. If
4. Lim Festival is among the most impressive festivals, ceremonies \_\_\_\_\_ singing events.  
a. or                      b. but                      c. yet                      d. and
5. The navigation of the boat, called *ghe ngo*, requires great skills \_\_\_\_\_ it can easily be flipped.  
a. therefore                      b. because                      c. when                      d. although
6. \_\_\_\_\_ you consider yourself a culture enthusiast, Hue Arts Festival is a must.  
a. If                      b. Though                      c. Because                      d. As
7. The festival only lasted for three days; \_\_\_\_\_ they spent nearly a month preparing for it.  
a. when                      b. moreover                      c. otherwise                      d. however
8. In Quang Ninh, you can go to Yen Tu Mountain to attend the Yen Tu Festival, \_\_\_\_\_ you can visit Ha Long Bay.  
a. so                      b. yet                      c. or                      d. otherwise
9. \_\_\_\_\_ there are loads of festivals in Vietnam, Tet or Tet Nguyen Dan is the most important one.  
a. Since                      b. Although                      c. When                      d. As long as
10. Festival visitors can take part in cultural activities, such as visiting art galleries, historical places and parks. \_\_\_\_\_, they can taste exotic food and dishes.  
a. Moreover                      b. Therefore                      c. However                      d. Otherwise

**V. Complete the sentences with the correct form or tense of the verbs from the box.**

worship    preserve    cheer    offer    pray    commemorate    perform    float

1. *Quan ho* singing is \_\_\_\_\_ in traditional festivals in Bac Ninh.  
2. On Tet holiday, Vietnamese people \_\_\_\_\_ their ancestors a five-fruit tray.  
3. I enjoy going to Huong Pagoda and \_\_\_\_\_ Buddha.  
4. The book will be published in October to \_\_\_\_\_ the 100th anniversary of Morris's death.  
5. The crowds are shouting and \_\_\_\_\_ to encourage their teams.  
6. We should \_\_\_\_\_ our tradition and culture for future generations.  
7. Lotus lanterns are \_\_\_\_\_ on the small river in the old town.  
8. On the first day of the New Year, we visit the temples \_\_\_\_\_ for good fortune and health.

**VI. State whether the following sentences are simple, complex or compound.**

1. The Elephant Racing Festival is the biggest cultural festival in Tay Nguyen.  
2. You can either choose to ride in a cable car up to the pagoda or walk up.  
3. We first learned to sing *quan ho* when we were between 15 and 17.  
4. The oarsmen are encouraged by the sounds of drums and the cheering crowds while they are racing.  
5. Maya doesn't follow the procession, but she supports the dancing team.  
6. Hundreds of thousands of people gather on the two banks of the river to watch the Ngo junk race.  
7. Ngo junk race is a community sports which enhance unity among Khmer people from villages.  
8. Even though many people come to Buon Don to ride the elephants, a lot of them fail to witness the Elephant Racing Festival.  
9. Tet is the most important festival in Vietnam; therefore, most Vietnamese return home for Tet.  
10. They played together as a team very well; however, they didn't win the race.

11. After taking a boat to the mountain, we can take a cable car up.
12. It was an exciting festival, so I felt very lucky to participate in it.
13. Last year, I went to Huong Pagoda with my family and friends.

**VII. Complete each sentence with *and, but, so, or, moreover, however, therefore, or otherwise*.**

1. You must do your homework; \_\_\_\_\_, you might get a bad grade.
2. He's seventy-two, \_\_\_\_\_ he still swims, runs and plays football regularly.
3. John studied hard for the math exam; \_\_\_\_\_ he got an A+.
4. Do you want a cup of tea, \_\_\_\_\_ would you prefer coffee?
5. Smoking gives you bad breath. \_\_\_\_\_, it is harmful to your health.
6. There are many learning English websites; \_\_\_\_\_, some of them are not free.
7. I like to read, \_\_\_\_\_ my grammar is always on-point.
8. I hope you are feeling better \_\_\_\_\_ will be back at college soon.
9. Engineering is an interesting career. \_\_\_\_\_, you have to be good at maths.
10. To be a doctor you have to study biology, \_\_\_\_\_ chemistry is also important.

**VII. Complete each sentence with an appropriate word. The first letter of each word is given.**

1. At Tet, Vietnamese people usually d \_\_\_\_\_ their homes with yellow apricotblossoms or peach blossoms.
2. Vietnamese believe that the colour of red and yellow will bring good f \_\_\_\_\_.
3. We have the custom of lighting the candles and burning i \_\_\_\_\_ before praying in front of the altar.
4. His grandmother's funeral was a private c \_\_\_\_\_ attended only by the family.
5. Streets lead to Huong pagoda are very c \_\_\_\_\_ during its festival time.
6. On the first day of Tet, Vietnamese people often visit a pagoda to p \_\_\_\_\_ for good luck and happiness.
7. Buddhist o \_\_\_\_\_ include fruit, flowers, incense and candles.
8. The Giong Festival is held to commemorate Saint Giong who d \_\_\_\_\_ the An invaders.

**VIII. Supply the correct tense or form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. Hung King Temple Festival \_\_\_\_\_ (become) one of the greatest national festivals in Viet Nam for a long time.
2. The Saint Giong Festival \_\_\_\_\_ (hold) many years ago but it officially \_\_\_\_\_ (become) a national festival in the 11th century.
3. While children \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for the moon to rise, they sing, dance and listen to the story of *Hang Nga and Cuoi*.
4. The local authority \_\_\_\_\_ (arrange) a meeting on promotion of the festival last Friday.
5. Our school \_\_\_\_\_ (take) part in the festival since 2008.
6. While we \_\_\_\_\_ (play) some folk games at the festival, it started to rain heavily.
7. Each year, thousands of tourists \_\_\_\_\_ (come) to visit Lim Festival and enjoy that Intangible Cultural Heritage.
8. Traditionally, *Quan ho* songs \_\_\_\_\_ (perform) by both men and women on the boats and in the Lim Pagoda.
9. Duong recommended Peter \_\_\_\_\_ (attend) the Hue Festival.
10. Before Tet, women are very busy \_\_\_\_\_ (prepare) traditional foods.

**IX. Complete each sentence with an appropriate preposition.**

1. The Lim Festival takes place every year \_\_\_\_\_ the 13th day of the first lunar month.
2. Elephant Race Festival is held \_\_\_\_\_ Don Village, Dak Lak Province.
3. Fishermen pray \_\_\_\_\_ the good fortune at Whale Festival.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ the Mid-Autumn Festival, children carry beautiful lanterns.
5. They decorate their homes \_\_\_\_\_ kumquat trees and peach branches.
6. The Hung King Temple Festival has become a public holiday \_\_\_\_\_ 2007.
7. The Buddhist Festival lasts \_\_\_\_\_ three months from the first to the third lunar month.
8. Foreigners are always keen \_\_\_\_\_ watching Vietnamese families prepare \_\_\_\_\_ Tet.
9. At the Kate festival, Cham people take part \_\_\_\_\_ a procession to the nearby temple.
10. The Lunar New Year typically takes place \_\_\_\_\_ late January or early February.

**X. Read the text carefully, then choose the correct answers.**

Elephant Racing Festival, one of the biggest festivals in Tay Nguyen, is held (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in the third lunar month.

As preparation for the festival, villagers (2) \_\_\_\_\_ their elephants with a wide range of food apart from grass, including corns, sugar canes, sweet potatoes, papayas, and bananas. Also, in order to preserve their strength, the elephants take a rest (3) \_\_\_\_\_ hard work.

On the day of the event, elephants from several villages (4) \_\_\_\_\_ at Don Village. Each time, ten elephants will run at the same time for about one or two kilometers. The competition is guided by the sound of *tu va*, a kind of horn. The first elephant (5) \_\_\_\_\_ reaches the appointed destination will receive a laurel wreath as a sign of victory, and it will enjoy the achievement excitedly with sugar canes and bananas from surrounding people. (6) \_\_\_\_\_ finishing the race at Don Village, the elephants move to Serepok River for competition – swimming. They also participate in games (7) \_\_\_\_\_ football and tug of war.

At the end of the festive day, all festival goers mass at Don Village's community house for feasting, drinking stem wine, and dancing in a jubilant (8) \_\_\_\_\_ with the boisterous sound of gongs and drums.

- |                  |               |              |             |
|------------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. a. mostly     | b. constantly | c. monthly   | d. annually |
| 2. a. poach      | b. herd       | c. feed      | d. train    |
| 3. a. without    | b. with       | c. of        | d. from     |
| 4. a. come       | b. drive      | c. round     | d. gather   |
| 5. a. who        | b. what       | c. which     | d. whose    |
| 6. a. Although   | b. After      | c. While     | d. However  |
| 7. a. alike      | b. like       | c. likely    | d. liking   |
| 8. a. atmosphere | b. experience | c. tradition | d. feature  |

**XI. Read the text carefully, then choose the correct answers.**

Tran Temple Festival, one of the largest annual spring festivals in Vietnam, is held on the 14th night and 15th day of the first lunar month at the national historical complex of the Tran Kings' shrines and tombs in Tien Duc Commune, Hung Ha District, Nam Dinh City. It usually begins with an incense-offering rite at the kings' tombs and a ritual for the opening of the gates of Den Thanh (Thanh Temple), Den Mau (Mother Temple) and the Tran Kings' shrines. **They** are followed by a 'water procession', in which people will carry nine ornate palanquins with memorial **plaques** of the Kings of the Tran Dynasty and members of their royal families. A series of folk games are also organized during the festival, such as a rice-cooking challenge, clay firecrackers, chung cake wrapping and tug of war, alongside traditional performances and sport games including lion dances, dragon dances, *cheo* and *chau van* singing, human chess, wrestling and martial arts.

The Tran Temple Festival was recognized as a national intangible heritage in 2014. The historical complex of the Tran Kings' shrines and tombs received special national relic status last year.

- ornate (adj): *được sơn son thiếp vàng* - palanquin (n): kiệu rước (lễ hội)

- How often is the Tran Temple Festival held?  
a. every month      b. every year      c. every two years      d. twice a year
- The Tran Temple Festival usually begins with \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. formal ceremonies      b. a water procession  
c. prayers of thanks      d. incense offerings to the gods
- The word '**they**' in the passage refers to \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. temples      b. offerings      c. shrines      d. rituals
- What does '**plaque**' mean?  
a. a large picture printed on paper  
b. a wide piece of cloth with a message on it  
c. a small piece of paper with information on it  
d. a flat piece of metal, wood or stone with writing on it
- Which of the followings is not organized in the festival?  
a. rice cooking      b. tug of war      c. boat race      d. human chess
- Based on the information in the text, which statement is false?  
a. The Tran Temple Festival aims to honour the Tran Dynasty.  
b. The seal opening ceremony takes place on the 14th night.  
c. The main rituals are preceded by a water procession.  
d. Traditional *cheo* and *chau van* singing is performed in the festival.

- 7, Which of the followings is not mentioned in the text?
  - a. The Tran Dynasty is the most brilliant reign in Vietnamese history.
  - b. Tran Temple Festival was recognized as a national intangible heritage.
  - c. Nine ornate palanquins are carried in the water procession.
  - d. There are plenty of activities to keep festival goers entertained.

**XII. Read the text carefully, then do the tasks.**

Ok Om Bok is a traditional festival of Khmer people in Mekong Delta. Ok Om Bok Festival takes place on the Full Moon day of the tenth month in Vietnamese Lunar Calendar, aiming at worshipping the Moon.

At the night of the Full Moon day, Khmer people set up a table of offerings; new sticky rice, yam, coconuts, bananas, sweets, etc and bow their head to show their thanks to the Moon. After that, there is a colorful and sparkling lanterns ceremony on Ba Om Lake. Khmer people not only drop these lanterns on the lake but also fly them to the sky. Dozens of great lanterns lighten the night sky in bustling music and the joy of Khmer people. Khmer people believe that these lanterns will bring bad luck and risk far away.

The most attractive and exciting activity of Ok Om Bok Festival is Ngo race (a special kind of boat of Khmer people in shape of Nagar snake). Ngo race is a traditional sport of Khmer in Ok Om Bok Festival. Ngo is a long boat with 25 - 30 meters in length and 1 - 1.4 meter in width. There are about 40 to 60 boatmen in every "Ngo" with a leader at the top to guide the whole team. Before the race, people gather along the riverbanks making an exciting atmosphere. During the race, the boisterous sound of drum, trumpet, cheers and applause urge boatmen row as fast as possible to the end.

Overall, Ok Om Bok is an important festival in Khmer people's life. Ok Om Bok Festival has sacred meaning in spiritual life of these people, making a cultural characteristic of this ethnic community.

**A. Decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F).**

1. Ok Om Bok Festival is celebrated in October in the Western Calendar.
2. At the night of the festival, Khmer people drop lanterns on the lake and fly lanterns to the sky.
3. Ngo is a snake-shaped boat of Khmer people.
4. Ngo boat race takes place right after Ok Om Bok Festival.
5. The boatmen are encouraged by the people gathering along the riverbanks.
6. Ok Om Bok Festival promote traditional cultural identity of Khmer community.

**B. Answer the questions.**

1. When does Ok Om Bok Festival take place?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What is Ok Om Bok Festival celebrated for?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Where do Khmer people float their lanterns?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. How long is a Ngo boat?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. How many boatmen are there in every Ngo boat?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Why is Ok Om Bok an important festival in Khmer people's life?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**XIII. Rewrite the sentences without changing their meaning. Use the words in brackets.**

1. Although Hue is far from Hanoi, Peter often travels to Hanoi by motorbike. (but)  
Hue \_\_\_\_\_
2. Christian went to Soc Trang to join Ok Om Bok Festival. (because)  
Christian \_\_\_\_\_
3. Sebastien is a French, but he plays Vietnamese folk games well. (although)  
Although \_\_\_\_\_
4. He has to join the festival in order to play Vietnamese folk games. (so)  
He \_\_\_\_\_
5. Although the weather was terrible we had a good time. (spite)  
We \_\_\_\_\_
6. So that Susan would be fit for the skiing, she went to the gym three times a week. (order)  
Susan \_\_\_\_\_

7. My family went to Huong Pagoda Festival two months ago. (since)  
It \_\_\_\_\_
8. You won't get in to see the show if you don't have reserved seats. (unless)  
You \_\_\_\_\_
9. Brian was really interested in Vietnamese cultural and spiritual events. (interest)  
Brian \_\_\_\_\_
10. If you don't start early, you will get stuck in the traffic. (otherwise)  
You \_\_\_\_\_

**XIV. Combine each pair of sentences using the conjunction in brackets.**

1. The world is getting warmer. Polar bears are in danger of becoming extinct. (because)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. There weren't enough students. They closed the village school. (as)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. I really enjoyed the concert. The music was too loud. (although)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. He got a creampie smashed in his face. Everyone laughed. (when)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Paul was walking to the bus stop. He found somebody's wallet on the ground. (while)  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Jackie will take out the trash. She is done with her chores. (after)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. You study for the test. You will do much better. (if)  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Rex practiced his guitar. He could play the song perfectly. (until)  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. We could get back to shore. It started to rain hard. (before)  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. I saw him. He was always carrying a plastic shopping bag. (whenever)  
\_\_\_\_\_

**XV. Make questions for the underlined words.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
The Elephant Race Festival is usually held in Don Village or in forests near the Sevepoi River.
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
Thirteen elephants joined the elephant race on March 12 in Lak District.
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
The Lim festival takes place on the 13th day of the first lunar month.
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
The spring festival of Bai Dinh Pagoda lasts for three months.
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
Saint Giong Festival was recognized by UNESCO as world intangible cultural heritage.
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
Vu Lan Festival is so-called "Xa toi vong nhan" festival because this is the day for the death's souls.
7. \_\_\_\_\_  
The Kate Festival is celebrated by the Cham ethnic group.
8. \_\_\_\_\_  
The Perfume Pagoda is about 70 kilometers away from Hanoi.
9. \_\_\_\_\_  
Tran Temple Festival is held to commemorate the Kings of the Tran dynasty.
10. \_\_\_\_\_  
To celebrate the Mid-Autumn Festival, children commonly join street parades, carrying lanterns and wearing masks.

**UNIT 6: FOLK TALES**

**A. VOCABULARY**

1. brave (adj) /brɛv/: dũng cảm, gan dạ

2. Buddha (n) /'bʊdə/: Bụt, Đức phật
3. cruel (adj) /'kru:əl/: độc ác
4. cunning (adj) /'kʌnɪŋ/: xảo quyệt, gian xảo
5. dragon (n) /'dræɡən/: con rồng
6. emperor (n) /'empə(r)/: hoàng đế
7. evil (adj) /'i:vl/: xấu xa về mặt đạo đức
8. fable (n) /'feɪbl/: truyện ngụ ngôn
9. fairy (n) /'feəri/: tiên, nàng tiên
10. fairy tale (n) /'feəri teɪl/: truyện thần tiên, truyện cổ tích
11. folk tale (n) /fəʊk teɪl/: truyện dân gian
12. fox (n) /fɒks/: con cáo
13. generous (adj) /'dʒenərəs/: hào phóng, rộng rãi
14. giant (n) /'dʒaɪənt/: người khổng lồ
15. glitch (n) /ɡlɪtʃ/: mụ phù thủy
16. hare (n) /heə(r)/: con thỏ
17. knight (n) /naɪt/: hiệp sĩ
18. legend (n) /'ledʒənd/: truyền thuyết
19. lion (n) /'laɪən/: con sư tử
20. mean (adj) /mi:n/: keo kiệt, bủn xỉn
21. ogre (n) /'əʊɡə(r)/: quỷ ăn thịt người, yêu tinh
22. princess (n) /,prɪn'ses/: công chúa
23. tortoise (n) /'tɔ:təs/: con rùa
24. wicked (adj) /'wɪkɪd/: xấu xa, độc ác
25. wolf (n) /wʊlf/: con chó sói
26. woodcutter (n) /'wʊdkʌtə(r)/: tiểu phu, người đốn củi

## B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### I. Past simple

#### 1. Form:

|                   |                                              |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <b>Positive:</b>  | <b>S + V-ed / 2</b>                          |
| <b>Negative:</b>  | <b>S + didn't + V (bare-inf)</b>             |
| <b>Questions:</b> | <b>Did (not) + S + V(bare-inf)...?</b>       |
|                   | <b>-&gt; Yes, S + did. / No, S + didn't.</b> |

#### 2. Use:

Thì quá khứ thường được dùng để chỉ sự vật, hiện tượng đã xảy ra và đã kết thúc tại một thời điểm cụ thể trong quá khứ.

#### 3. Example:

*Last year I **worked** at the cinema, **studied** for my degree and **wrote** a column for the local newspaper.*

### II. Past continuous:

#### 1. Form:

|                   |                                                             |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Positive:</b>  | <b>S + was / were + V-ing</b>                               |
| <b>Negative:</b>  | <b>S + wasn't / weren't + V-ing</b>                         |
| <b>Questions:</b> | <b>Was / Were (not) + S + V-ing ...?</b>                    |
|                   | <b>-&gt; Yes, S + was/ were. / No, S + wasn't/ weren't.</b> |

#### 2. Use:

Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn được dùng để chỉ sự vật, hiện tượng đã xảy ra ở một thời điểm cụ thể trong quá khứ hoặc một khoảng thời gian không xác định trong quá khứ.

#### Example:

- *It happened at five in the afternoon **while** he **was watching** the news on TV.*
- *He **was doing** his homework in his bedroom **when** the burglar came into the house*

## TEST 1 UNIT 6

### I. Choose the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.



- |                      |                     |                   |                    |
|----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>school</u>  | B. <u>architect</u> | C. <u>change</u>  | D. <u>chemical</u> |
| 2. A. <u>buffalo</u> | B. <u>minority</u>  | C. <u>gold</u>    | D. <u>close</u>    |
| 3. A. <u>end</u>     | B. <u>pencil</u>    | C. <u>open</u>    | D. <u>bench</u>    |
| 4. A. <u>wanted</u>  | B. <u>washed</u>    | C. <u>watched</u> | D. <u>stopped</u>  |
| 5. A. <u>remote</u>  | B. <u>explore</u>   | C. <u>relax</u>   | D. <u>diverse</u>  |

**II. Choose the words that have the different stress from the others.**

- |                |               |               |             |
|----------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. A. reflect  | B. fable      | C. spindle    | D. legend   |
| 2. A. ancestor | B. origin     | C. stepmother | D. continue |
| 3. A. capture  | B. granny     | C. command    | D. swallow  |
| 4. A. rescue   | B. religion   | C. servant    | D. tortoise |
| 5. A. emperor  | B. woodcutter | C. announce   | D. suddenly |

**III. Complete the following sentences with prepositions of time: *at, on, in* if necessary.**

- I don't like going out alone \_\_\_\_\_ night
- I'm afraid I can't come to your birthday party \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday.
- What do you usually do \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend?
- Can you play football with us \_\_\_\_\_ next Sunday?
- We went to bed late \_\_\_\_\_ last night.
- They are leaving for Hue \_\_\_\_\_ next Friday.
- Will you be at home \_\_\_\_\_ this evening?
- I always feel relaxed \_\_\_\_\_ the evening.
- We went to Nha Trang \_\_\_\_\_ last summer.
- I won't be out so long. I'll be back \_\_\_\_\_ ten minutes.

**IV. Choose the correct answers.**

- Alice **saw/ was seeing** the accident when she was catching the bus.
- What **were you doing/ did you do** when I called?
- I **didn't visit/ weren't visiting** my friends last summer holiday.
- It **rained/ was raining** heavily last July.
- While people were talking to each other, he **read/ was reading** his book.
- My sister **was eating/ ate** hamburgers every weekend last month.
- While we **were running/ run** in the park, Mary fell over.
- Did you find/ Were you finding** your keys yesterday?
- Who **was she dancing/ did she dance** with at the party last night?
- They **were watching/ watched** football on TV all day.

**V. Find the mistakes.**

- I was play football when she called me.  
.....
- Was you study Math at 5 p.m. yesterday?  
.....
- What was she do while her mother was making lunch?  
.....
- Where did you went last Sunday?  
.....
- They weren't sleep during the meeting last Monday.  
.....
- He got up early and have breakfast with his family yesterday morning.  
.....
- She didn't broke the flower vase. Tom did.  
.....
- Last week my friend and I go to the beach by bus.  
.....
- While I am listening to music, I heard the doorbell.  
.....
- Peter turn on the TV, but nothing happened.  
.....

**VI. Put the verb in correct tense or form.**

1. Trung's father **(teach)** \_\_\_\_\_ him how **(ride)** \_\_\_\_\_ a bicycle when he **(be)** \_\_\_\_\_ twelve years old.
2. How \_\_\_\_\_ your brother **(go)** \_\_\_\_\_ to work everyday?  
- He usually \_\_\_\_\_ **(drive)**.
3. We **(go)** \_\_\_\_\_ to Ha Long Bay this weekend.
4. You **(use)** \_\_\_\_\_ to play so much when you **(live)** \_\_\_\_\_ in the countryside?
5. Yesterday Hoang **(spend)** \_\_\_\_\_ two hours **(repair)** \_\_\_\_\_ his computer set.

**VII. Put the correct verb form of the past tenses.**

In my last holiday, I went to Hawaii. When I **(go)** 1 \_\_\_\_\_ to the beach for the first time, something wonderful happened. I **(swim)** 2 \_\_\_\_\_ in the sea while my mother was sleeping in the sun. My brother was building a castle and my father **(drink)** 3 \_\_\_\_\_ some water. Suddenly I **(see)** 4 \_\_\_\_\_ a boy on the beach. His eyes were blue like the water in the sea and his hair **(be)** 5 \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful black. He was very tall and thin and his face was brown. My heart **(beat)** 6 \_\_\_\_\_ fast. I **(ask)** 7 \_\_\_\_\_ him for his name with a shy voice. He **(tell)** 8 \_\_\_\_\_ me that his name was John. **He (stay)** 9 \_\_\_\_\_ with me the whole afternoon. In the evening, we met again. We ate pizza in a restaurant. The following days we **(have)** 10 \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of fun together. At the end of my holidays when I left Hawaii I said good-bye to John. We had tears in our eyes. He wrote to me a letter very soon and I answered him.

**VIII. Read the following passage, answer/ complete the questions/ statements below it.**

Once, there was a boy named Boly. He lived with his aged grandmother in Kanchi Village. His grandmother always woke up very early in the morning and made little buns and cakes. She sold them in the market place. With the money she earned, she sent Boly to school.

Boly was a good boy. He was an orphan. He loved his grandmother a lot. After school, he always went home quickly. Then, he would have his lunch and do his homework. In the evenings, Boly would go round the village selling the cakes his grandmother made. Boly and his grandmother lived quite happily.

One day, Boly's grandmother fell ill. She could not make any more cakes. Boly now had to look for work. He went from house to house doing odd jobs.

It was in one of these houses that a kind gentleman asked Boly why he was working at such a tender age. After listening to Boly's story, the man said that he wanted to adopt Boly. He was willing to take care of Boly's grandmother too. From then on, Boly and his grandmother led a very happy life.

1. The phrases of words "very old" is similar to the word \_\_\_\_\_ in the text.
2. Boly was living with his grandmother because \_\_\_\_\_
3. Boly's grandmother could afford to send him to school by \_\_\_\_\_
4. After school, Boly would immediately \_\_\_\_\_
5. Boly had to look for work because \_\_\_\_\_

**IX. Answer the following questions, using the suggested words or phrases in brackets.**

**Example:** Where did the children go after the lesson? (the park)

*They went to the park after the lessons.*

1. When did you begin learning English? (three years ago)  
=> \_\_\_\_\_
2. How many exercises did you do last night? (four exercises)  
=> \_\_\_\_\_
3. What time did the man telephone his wife? (at two o'clock)  
=> \_\_\_\_\_
4. How many years was Mr. Green in Viet Nam? (for ten years)  
=> \_\_\_\_\_
5. What time did you get up this morning? (half past five)  
=> \_\_\_\_\_
6. What did you have for breakfast this morning? (bread and omelets)  
=> \_\_\_\_\_
7. What time did you leave home? (six o'clock)  
=> \_\_\_\_\_
8. How did you go to school this morning? (by bicycle)  
=> \_\_\_\_\_

9. What did you do after your homework last night? (watch television)

=> .....

10. What time did you go to bed last night? (at ten o'clock)

=> .....

**X. Rewrite the sentences, using "the past continuous" and "while" or "when".**

1. We were having dinner and they were listening to the radio.

→ We were .....

2. She was sleeping and the fire started.

→ The fire .....

3. It began to rain and what were you doing?

→ What .....

4. The farmer started whistling and he was ploughing the field.

→ When .....

5. You came and what were they doing?

→ What .....

6. She came and what was happening?

→ What was .....

7. She was reading a book and the man came in.

→ The man .....

8. They were working in the field and the volcano erupted.

→ The volcano .....

9. The ship was leaving the harbor and the lava hit the town.

→ The lava .....

10. The headmaster was going to his car and someone hit him on the head.

→ Someone hit the headmaster .....

## TEST 2 (UNIT 6)

**I. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.**

1. The toad was very \_\_\_\_\_ because he tried to find way to the heaven to sue God..

A. brave                      B. kind                      C. generous                      D. mean

2. The King was very \_\_\_\_\_ to allow his daughter, Tien Dung, to travel to the many wonderful places of the kingdom.

A. wise                      B. mean                      C. kind                      D. wicked

3. The Peacock was well known to be a/an \_\_\_\_\_ animal, so he just applied black colour to the Crow's feathers.

A. hard-working                      B. lazy                      C. ugly                      D. clever

4. The wife of the fisherman was very \_\_\_\_\_ when she demanded for bigger and bigger things.

A. kind                      B. generous                      C. greedy                      D. fierce

5. Ali Baba was very \_\_\_\_\_ when he also used the words "Open Sesame!" to enter cave of treasures.

A. wise                      B. cunning                      C. kind                      D. evil

6. The servant was very \_\_\_\_\_ to mark other houses with white chalk so that the thieves couldn't find Ali Baba's house.

A. mean                      B. wicked                      C. kind                      D. Clever

**II. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D complete the sentences.**

1. ThachSanh was very \_\_\_\_\_ when he let Ly Thong and his mother go back to their hometown.

A. selfish                      B. mean                      C. generous                      D. brave

2. The ogre was so \_\_\_\_\_, and was a to catch ThachSanh with its sharp claws.

A. fierce                      B. mean                      C. clever                      D. ugly

3. ThachSanh was so \_\_\_\_\_ that he could push back the troops with his magical rice pot.

A. kind                      B. clever                      C. hard-working                      D. fast

4. An Tiem was very \_\_\_\_\_ to move to a deserted island.

A. brave                      B. honest                      C. kind                      D. generous

5. Khoai was very \_\_\_\_\_, but his landowner was \_\_\_\_\_.

A. lazy - cunning                      B. clever - brave                      C. honest - wise                      D. honest - cunning

6. Tam was a very \_\_\_\_\_ girl who had to work all day.

- A. mean                      B. generous                      C. hard-working                      D. lazy

7. Cam was very \_\_\_\_\_ when she killed the nightingale, cooked it and threw the feathers in the Imperial Garden.

- A. wicked                      B. ugly                      C. honest                      D. mean

8. Luu Binh was very \_\_\_\_\_ to invite Duong Le to come and live with him.

- A. selfish                      B. kind                      C. mean                      D. brave

**III. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or Past Continuous tense.**

- Last night I (read) \_\_\_\_\_ when suddenly I (hear) \_\_\_\_\_ a shout.
- The postman (come) while \_\_\_\_\_ while I (have) \_\_\_\_\_ lunch.
- When we (go) \_\_\_\_\_ out, it \_\_\_\_\_ (rain).
- (you/ watch) \_\_\_\_\_ TV when I (phone) \_\_\_\_\_ you?
- We (meet) \_\_\_\_\_ Ann at the party yesterday, she (wear) \_\_\_\_\_ a lovely white dress.
- The boys (break) \_\_\_\_\_ the window while they (play) \_\_\_\_\_ football
- I was home late, but my friends (wait) \_\_\_\_\_ when I (arrive) \_\_\_\_\_.
- He said that he (not drive) \_\_\_\_\_ fast when the accident (happen) \_\_\_\_\_.
- Tom (fall) \_\_\_\_\_ off the ladder while he (paint) \_\_\_\_\_ the ceiling.
- What (you/do) \_\_\_\_\_ at this time yesterday?

**IV. Put the verbs into the correct form, the Past Continuous or Simple Past.**

- When I last (see) \_\_\_\_\_ them, they (try) \_\_\_\_\_ to find a new flat near the office.
- I (walk) \_\_\_\_\_ along the street when I suddenly (feel) \_\_\_\_\_ something hit me in the back.
- When we (drive) \_\_\_\_\_ down the hill, a strange object (appear) \_\_\_\_\_ in the sky.
- How fast (she/drive) \_\_\_\_\_ when the accident (happen) \_\_\_\_\_?
- My mother (wait) \_\_\_\_\_ for me when I (come) \_\_\_\_\_ home.
- Mrs. Smith (invite) \_\_\_\_\_ Mrs. Quyen to have dinner while Mrs. Quyen (visit) \_\_\_\_\_ the USA.
- I (not want) \_\_\_\_\_ to go with him because I (wait) \_\_\_\_\_ for a phone call.
- The doorbell (ring) \_\_\_\_\_ while Tom (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ TV.
- It suddenly (begin) \_\_\_\_\_ to rain while Linda (sit) \_\_\_\_\_ in the garden.
- The lights (go) \_\_\_\_\_ out while we (have) \_\_\_\_\_ dinner.

**V. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or Past Progressive tense.**

- When my uncle (come) \_\_\_\_\_, we (water) \_\_\_\_\_ the plants and flowers in the garden.
- Thu (talk) \_\_\_\_\_ to her friend, Hoa, on the phone at 8 o'clock last night.
- Lan (practise) \_\_\_\_\_ the piano while her sister (read) \_\_\_\_\_ comics at 7 o'clock last night.
- The monkeys (climb) \_\_\_\_\_ up the trees when we (visit) \_\_\_\_\_ the zoo yesterday morning.
- Ba (talk) \_\_\_\_\_ with his classmate when the principal (enter) \_\_\_\_\_ their classroom.
- Last night I (make) \_\_\_\_\_ a cake when the lights (go) \_\_\_\_\_ out.
- While I (cross) \_\_\_\_\_ the street, I (step) \_\_\_\_\_ on a banana skin and (fall) \_\_\_\_\_ heavily.
- It (begin) \_\_\_\_\_ to rain when I (plant) \_\_\_\_\_ some flowers in the garden.
- When I (arrive) \_\_\_\_\_, the teacher (write) \_\_\_\_\_ on the blackboard.
- When they (walk) \_\_\_\_\_ down the stairs, they (hear) \_\_\_\_\_ a strange noise.

**VI. Complete the sentences with verbs in brackets in the past continuous.**

Last Saturday, we were very busy. In the morning, ...

- I (do) \_\_\_\_\_ my homework
- my parents (shop) \_\_\_\_\_.
- my sister (chat) \_\_\_\_\_ to her friends online.
- my grandparents (drive) \_\_\_\_\_ to our house.

At two o'clock in the afternoon, ...

- I (make) \_\_\_\_\_ tea for everyone.
- my sister and my mum (cook) \_\_\_\_\_ dinner.

7. my grandmother (sleep) \_\_\_\_\_ in front of the TV.  
At five o'clock in the afternoon, ...  
8. we (have) \_\_\_\_\_ a snack.  
At six o'clock in the evening, ...  
9. my parents and my grandmother (drink) \_\_\_\_\_ tea.  
10. my grandfather (try) \_\_\_\_\_ to send an e-mail on my computer.

**VII. Read this fable, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each gap.**

**Wisdom**

A farmer was ploughing his field. Sometimes, he shouted at and beat the buffalo that was (1) \_\_\_\_\_ the plough. A tiger happened to stroll along the edge of the field.  
"Buffalo, you are so big. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ do you let this weak man beat you?", he asked.  
The buffalo answered, "The man is small (3) his wisdom is big."  
The tiger did not understand what wisdom was (4) he shouted at the man. "Hey you, man, what is wisdom? Let me see it."  
"Wisdom? Oh, my wisdom (5) \_\_\_\_\_ at home", replied the man, looking at the tiger's teeth and claws.  
"Go home (6) get it. Bring it here so that I can see it", the tiger ordered.  
"Oh, no! I am afraid that you will eat my buffalo (7) I am gone. (8) \_\_\_\_\_ you agree to be tied with rope. I will run home and fetch my wisdom."  
The tiger agreed. (9) fastening the tiger, the farmer beat its back.  
"(10) \_\_\_\_\_ is my wisdom. This is my wisdom", he explained.

- |             |           |            |           |
|-------------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| 1. A.pull   | B.pulling | C.pulled   | D.to pull |
| 2. A.What   | B.How     | C.When     | D.Why     |
| 3. A.and    | B.but     | C.so       | D.or      |
| 4. A.and    | B.but     | C.although | D.so      |
| 5. A.is     | B.are     | C.was      | D.were    |
| 6. A.but    | B.and     | C.so       | D.yet     |
| 7. A.why    | B.while   | C.although | D.if      |
| 8. A.While  | B.Because | C.Although | D.If      |
| 9. A.Before | B.After   | C.Because  | D. But    |
| 10. A.Here  | B.There   | C.She      | D.That    |

**VIII. Read the following passage, and then answer the questions.**

Once upon a time, there was a girl called Cinderella who did all the work in the kitchen while her lazy sisters did nothing. One night her sisters went to a ball at the palace. Cinderella was left at home, feeling very sad. After a time her fairy godmother appeared and told Cinderella that she could go to the ball, but she had to return home by midnight. So she went to the ball in a beautiful dress and a wonderful coach. She danced with the prince, but at midnight she ran back home, leaving one of her shoes on the dance floor. The prince wanted to see her again and went to every house in the capital until he found that the shoe was the right size for Cinderella. The prince and Cinderella were married and lived happily ever after.

- Where did Cinderella's sisters go one night?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- How was Cinderella when she was left at home?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Who appeared and helped Cinderella?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- What did Cinderella do at the ball  
\_\_\_\_\_
- What was the end of the story? \_\_\_\_\_

**IX. Read this legend, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each gap.**

**Lac Long Quan and Au Co (Origins of the Vietnamese)**

Once upon (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in the land called Lac Viet, Lac Long Quan, the dragon king of the ocean, lived (2) \_\_\_\_\_ and sometimes turned to the land to help people fight against demons, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ them to grow rice and cut wood for building houses.

Lac Long Quan (4) \_\_\_\_\_ Au Co - the daughter of Agriculture Saint. The couple lived in harmony in a palace. Later, Au Co gave birth to a

one-hundred-egg bag, hatching to 100 sons. One day, Lac Long Quan (5) \_\_\_\_\_ that he couldn't live (6) \_\_\_\_\_ the land all the time. He took so 50 of their sons settle down into the sea. The rest (7) \_\_\_\_\_ Au Co to go up to the mountain.

Although the separated, they remembered to help and protect (8) \_\_\_\_\_ in need. The oldest son, who followed the mother with 49 brother, (9) \_\_\_\_\_ King Hung. He set up his capital in Phong Chau and gave his country the name Van Lang.

From the story, the Vietnamese (10) \_\_\_\_\_ always proud of the noble origin: dragon's children and fairy's grandchildren.

- |                       |                |                |                   |
|-----------------------|----------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. A.time             | B.a time       | C.the time     | D.times           |
| 2. A.on water         | B.on the water | C.under water  | D.under the water |
| 3. A.teach            | B.ask          | C.learn        | D.make            |
| 4. A.got married with | B.got married  | C.married      | D.married with    |
| 5. A.was believed     | B.was thought  | C.considering  | D.felt            |
| 6. A.at               | B.on           | C.in           | D.under           |
| 7. A.follow           | B.following    | C.followed     | D.were followed   |
| 8. A.other            | B.each other   | C.another      | D.others          |
| 9. A.become           | B.becoming     | C.was becoming | D.became          |
| 10. A.is              | B.are          | C.was          | D.were            |

### TEST 3 UNIT 6

#### I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- |                      |                   |                               |                              |
|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. a. <u>f</u> able  | b. <u>b</u> rave  | c. <u>d</u> ragon             | d. <u>t</u> ale              |
| 2. a. <u>s</u> cream | b. <u>r</u> ead   | c. <u>r</u> each              | d. <u>h</u> ear              |
| 3. a. <u>w</u> alked | b. <u>f</u> illed | c. <u>s</u> wallow <u>e</u> d | d. <u>s</u> cream <u>e</u> d |
| 4. a. <u>g</u> iant  | b. <u>w</u> itch  | c. <u>k</u> nigh <u>t</u>     | d. <u>k</u> ind              |
| 5. a. <u>e</u> yes   | b. <u>o</u> gres  | c. <u>s</u> tor <u>i</u> es   | d. <u>c</u> akes             |

#### II. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

- The tale is about a prince who is turned \_\_\_\_\_ a frog by his wicked stepmother.  
a. to                      b. into                      c. out                      d. over
- The hare always boasted \_\_\_\_\_ how fast he could run.  
a. at                      b. for                      c. on                      d. about
- A \_\_\_\_\_ is a story from ancient times about famous people and events that may or may not be true.  
a. legend                      b. folktale                      c. fable                      d. fairytale
- In many cultures, a fox is the symbol for a \_\_\_\_\_ person.  
a. brave                      b. fierce                      c. cunning                      d. kind
- Vanessa is interested in reading Vietnamese folktales \_\_\_\_\_ she can't read Vietnamese well.  
a. although                      b. because                      c. while                      d. whereas
- What a \_\_\_\_\_ man he is! There's nothing he wouldn't do for us.  
a. mean                      b. generous                      c. cruel                      d. greedy
- Helen and I \_\_\_\_\_ together when the accident happened.  
a. talked                      b. have talked                      c. was talking                      d. were talking
- Tired of hearing the hare's boast, the tortoise \_\_\_\_\_ him to a race.  
a. urged                      b. pushed                      c. challenged                      d. suggested
- Sleeping Beauty was under a \_\_\_\_\_ when the prince found her.  
a. spell                      b. swear                      c. cloud                      d. wave
- \_\_\_\_\_ young Ella finds herself at the mercy of her cruel stepmother and stepsisters.  
a. Despite her father unexpectedly dies,  
b. After her father unexpectedly dies,  
c. When her father unexpectedly dies,

#### III. Match each word with its definition.

- |            |                                                                   |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. emperor | a. a woman who has magic powers, especially to do evil things     |
| 2. knight  | b. a man who rules an empire                                      |
| 3. giant   | c. a person whose job is cutting down trees                       |
| 4. fairy   | d. a man of high social rank who had a duty to fight for his king |
| 5. ogre    | e. a very large strong person                                     |
| 6. servant | f. a creature like a small person with wings who has magic powers |



7. witch g. a person who works in another person's house  
8. woodcutter h. a large, cruel, and frightening person who eats people

**IV. Complete the sentences with the correct adjectives from the box.**

brave cruel cunning evil fierce mean wicked generous greedy cheerful

- In the story, the \_\_\_\_\_ fox outwits the hunters.
- Kama was a \_\_\_\_\_ king. Every morning, he gave to the poor a hundred pounds of gold.
- Heroes are never perfect, but they are \_\_\_\_\_.
- His lively sense of humour helps to keep the meeting very \_\_\_\_\_.
- The elder brother was very \_\_\_\_\_. He filled a very large bag and all his pockets with gold.
- Cinderella's stepmother is very \_\_\_\_\_ to her.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ fairy bewitched the princess and made her fall into a long sleep.
- The Queen was an \_\_\_\_\_ woman. She offered the poisoned apple to Snow White.
- Everyone in the village was frightened of the \_\_\_\_\_ dragon.
- He was \_\_\_\_\_ to those who worked for him and generous to those who he hardly knew.

**V. Put the words into correct columns.**

dancer, considerate, beast, kind, fairy, brave, greedy, knight, mean, dancer, cheerful, cruel, witch, fierce, dragon, determined, woodcutter, prince, emperor, ogre, clever, wolf, princess, eagle, wise, tortoise, cunning, fox, loyal, thoughtful, honest

| Characters | Personality |
|------------|-------------|
| _____      | _____       |
| _____      | _____       |
| _____      | _____       |
| _____      | _____       |

**VI. Complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verbs in the box.**

turn travel tell enjoy accept know ring play cry teach visit study

- really \_\_\_\_\_ the concert last night. It was great!
- We \_\_\_\_\_ tennis yesterday because it was raining.
- Last summer my friend and I \_\_\_\_\_ around the south of France.
- \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ at the end of the film? I thought it was really sad.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ hard for the exam, so he failed.
- Where \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ before he came here?
- My PC was making a strange noise so I \_\_\_\_\_ it off.
- Our teacher \_\_\_\_\_ us a very interesting legend two days ago.
- They \_\_\_\_\_ each other very well when they were kids.
- She \_\_\_\_\_ the job because the salary was too low.
- \_\_\_\_\_ your parents \_\_\_\_\_ the Acropolis when they were in Greece?
- I was playing a computer game when the doorbell \_\_\_\_\_.

**VII. Use the prompts and the past continuous tense to write sentences.**

- I/ play/ computer games/ all day yesterday  
\_\_\_\_\_
- your friends/ wait/ for you/ all that time?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Sid/ not clean/ his room/ at 8p.m last night  
\_\_\_\_\_
- We/ have/ dinner/ when Tim arrived  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Sarah and Luke / not surf/ the Internet/ at that time  
\_\_\_\_\_
- What/ Jack/ do/ while/ you/ cook/ dinner?  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. This time last week/ my family/ visit/ my grandmother
8. It/ not snow/ when I left
9. you/ sleep/ when I phoned you last night?
10. While/ the children/ talk/ the teacher came into class

**VIII. Complete the sentences with the past continuous form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. Sam \_\_\_\_\_ (play) his guitar at half past seven last night
2. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) to work when the accident happened?
3. It \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) on Monday so we didn't play football.
4. At 6 o'clock on Saturday morning we \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) to the airport.
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not listen) to my teacher when he asked a question.
6. In 1986 my father \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in Paris. That's where he met my mother.
7. What \_\_\_\_\_ they \_\_\_\_\_ (do) when you arrived?
8. Greg \_\_\_\_\_ (not study) for the test when we went to his place.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Caroline \_\_\_\_\_ (ski) when she broke her leg?
10. My parents \_\_\_\_\_ (not sleep) when I came home last night.

**IX. Complete these sentences by putting the verbs into the past simple or past continuous.**

1. Last week we \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) through the Alps into Switzerland.
2. At 8p.m yesterday, we \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) a film.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ see) the football match yesterday?
4. James broke his arm when he \_\_\_\_\_ (play) rugby.
5. Kylie \_\_\_\_\_ (make) her first film when she was 21.
6. Mrs Jones \_\_\_\_\_ (not know) how to open the attachment in her email.
7. What \_\_\_\_\_ (your father/ do) when the alarm sounded?
8. When we \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) school yesterday, it was pouring with rain.
9. They \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) through the forest when the storm started.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not queue) for the bus when the accident happened.

**X. Choose the correct option.**

1. He *joined* / *was joining* the company 25 years ago and he still works for us.
2. At this time last week, we *lay* / *were lying* on a beach in the sun.
3. What *did they do* / *were they doing* at 11pm last night - it was really noisy?
4. When I *walked* / *was walking* into the class, the teacher *talked* / *was talking* about the new course.
5. My parents *lived* / *were living* in Berlin for ten years. They *lived* / *were living* that when the Berlin wall came down in 1999.
6. How many pictures *did you take* / *were you taking* while you *travelled* / *were travelling* around Ireland?
7. The Titanic *crossed* / *was crossing* the Atlantic when it *hit* / *was hitting* an iceberg.
8. As soon as I *saw* / *was seeing* the accident I *called* / *was calling* the police.
9. While Matt *did* / *was doing* his homework, his mother *made* / *was making* the dinner.
10. When the ambulance *came* / *was coming*, we *carried* / *were carrying* him into it.
11. We *played* / *were playing* a computer game when Mum *called* / *was called* for lunch.
12. When the teacher *said* / *was saying* "Stop!", I *still tried* / *was still trying* to finish the last question.

**XI. Complete the sentences with the past simple or past continuous form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. My car \_\_\_\_\_ (break) down when I \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) home from work.
2. Alan \_\_\_\_\_ (look) out of the window when he \_\_\_\_\_ (see) a UFO.
3. When he \_\_\_\_\_ (see) me, he \_\_\_\_\_ (fall) off the wall.
4. We \_\_\_\_\_ (try) to log on when the Wifi \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) working.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Jim \_\_\_\_\_ (smoke) when he \_\_\_\_\_ (turn) on the gas?
6. She \_\_\_\_\_ (be) so tired that she \_\_\_\_\_ (sleep) for twelve hours.
7. The tortoise \_\_\_\_\_ (run) while the hare \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a nap.
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ (phone) you four times last night but you \_\_\_\_\_ (sleep).
9. The police \_\_\_\_\_ (ask) them lots of questions before they \_\_\_\_\_ (release) them.

10. While the children \_\_\_\_\_ (surf) the Internet, they \_\_\_\_\_ (find) a really interesting website about music.
11. He \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) down the road when he \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) a loud noise.
12. When we \_\_\_\_\_ (be) in Canada, we \_\_\_\_\_ (go) skiing almost every day.
13. Where \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (go) last summer holiday, Jim? ~ Well, I \_\_\_\_\_ (take) a trip to Minneapolis.
14. When I \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive), they \_\_\_\_\_ (say) hello but continued working.
15. When you \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) me yesterday, I \_\_\_\_\_ (not go) to school, I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the doctor's - I felt terrible.

**XII. Complete each sentence with an appropriate preposition.**

1. Nick was doing some Internet research \_\_\_\_\_ Vietnamese legends.
2. The eagle picked \_\_\_\_\_ the tortoise and off they went.
3. The greedy brother filled a very large bag \_\_\_\_\_ gold.
4. The elder brother offered to swap his fortune \_\_\_\_\_ the starfruit tree.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ the way home, the eagle got tired and got him into the sea.
6. The hare always boasted \_\_\_\_\_ how fast he could run.
7. When the princess touched the spindle she fell \_\_\_\_\_ a deep sleep.
8. The tortoise challenged him \_\_\_\_\_ a race.
9. The witch put a magic spell on the prince and turned him \_\_\_\_\_ a frog.
10. The princess slept \_\_\_\_\_ one hundred years until a prince arrived \_\_\_\_\_ the castle and kissed her.

**XIII. Write the correct tense or form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ (receive) £300 when his uncle died.
2. The day we heard the news we \_\_\_\_\_ (have) holidays with our family.
3. Why \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ not answer) my phone call last night? ~ Oh, sorry, I \_\_\_\_\_ (take) a shower at that time.
4. She \_\_\_\_\_ (not see) her father since he \_\_\_\_\_ (start) to work in Marseille two years ago.
5. My mother \_\_\_\_\_ (fly) home from London today. Her flight \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) in an hour.
6. We decided not to go because it \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) very hard.
7. When I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a child, my mother \_\_\_\_\_ (read) me bedtime stories every night.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ ever/ hear) a Vietnamese folktale before?
9. The hare believed he would win the race, so he stopped \_\_\_\_\_ (take) a nap.
10. Once upon a time, there was a rich man \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in a village.

**XIV. Choose the word which best fits each gap.**

**The story of Chung Cakes and Day Cakes**

According to legend, King Hung wanted to choose one son as a successor to his throne. He (1) \_\_\_\_\_ all of his sons, and told them that whoever could bring him the most precious offering to the altar of the ancestors, would be awarded the throne.

All of the princes traveled throughout the country in search of the tastiest and most exotic foods to offer their father, (2) \_\_\_\_\_ Lang Lieu, the 18th prince. Being the poorest prince, he could not afford such luxurious foods and had no idea where to begin looking. One night, he dreamed of a genie (3) \_\_\_\_\_ told him "There is nothing greater than the sky or the earth. And the rice grain is the most precious thing (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the world. Now, use glutinous rice to make Chung Cake, a green and square cake, (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the earth\*. Then use ground glutinous rice to make Day Cake, a white, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ cake, symbolizing the sky." When he awoke, Lang Lieu was very happy and prepared the two kinds of cakes described by the genie.

When the day of the contest came, Hung King was impressed by the favors and the meaning of Lang Lieu's cakes. (7) \_\_\_\_\_, he chose him as the successor to the throne. Since then, Chung Cake and Day Cake became the (8) \_\_\_\_\_ food for the Tet holidays.

(\*) Long time ago, people thought the earth was square.

- |                 |            |            |             |
|-----------------|------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. a. summoned  | b. invited | c. ordered | d. arranged |
| 2. a. including | b. despite | c. except  | d. apart    |
| 3. a. he        | b. it      | c. which   | d. who      |

- |                   |                |                |                |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 4. a. over        | b. in          | c. on          | d. of          |
| 5. a. considering | b. signing     | c. symbolizing | d. presenting  |
| 6. a. shape dome  | b. dome shape  | c. shaped dome | d. dome shaped |
| 7. a. Therefore   | b. Otherwise   | c. Moreover    | d. However     |
| 8. a. ceremonial  | b. traditional | c. customary   | d. social      |

**XV. Read the text carefully, then do the tasks.**

**The Legend of Robin Hood**

Robin Hood was born near the end of the 12th century. His real name was Robert. He was the son of the Earl of Huntingdon. At that time, England had many problems. The King was cruel and greedy. His men were arrogant and brutal. The poor people of England suffered a lot. Many families died of hunger! One day, the cruel Sheriff of Nottingham killed Robin's father, and took away his lands. Young Robin lost his father, his home, his lands and all his possessions. He escaped to Sherwood Forest with his loyal servants. They decided to live as free men in the forest. They didn't want to be slaves of King John. However, the King considered them outlaws.

Robin and the outlaws lived in caverns in the forest. They all wore green clothes and carried bows and arrows. The outlaws were excellent archers. Robin Hood became the best archer in the region.

Some years passed, and there were more than 200 outlaws living in Sherwood Forest. Robin Hood was the hero of the poor. He continued robbing the rich to give to the poor. The Sheriff of Nottingham sent an army of soldiers to Sherwood Forest to capture Robin Hood. But Robin and his outlaws were in the trees. They killed all the soldiers except one.

Robin Hood's fame was everywhere. The people called him Saint Robin, and Robin, Sheriff of Sherwood Forest. A lot of new outlaws joined Robin Hood. They were loyal to him and followed him everywhere.

**A. Match the words that mean the same.**

- |                |             |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1. cruel       | a. wealthy  |
| 2. rob         | b. cave     |
| 3. rich        | c. property |
| 4. outlaw      | d. steal    |
| 5. cavern      | e. evil     |
| 6. possessions | f. criminal |

**B. Decide if the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

- Robin Hood was born in Sherwood Forest.
- Robin Hood was descended from the noble family of the Earl of Huntingdon.
- King John wasn't kind to his people.
- Robin Hood lived with his slaves in the forest.
- Robin Hood only stole from the rich.
- Robin and his men used guns as their weapons.
- The ordinary people of Nottingham hated Robin Hood.

**C. Answer the questions.**

- When was Robin Hood born?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- What was the England King at the time like?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Who did Robin live with in Sherwood Forest?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Why did Robin Hood and his servants decide to live in the forest?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- How many outlaws were there in Sherwood Forest?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- What did the people call Robin Hood?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**XVI. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.**

- The fable is very exciting.  
What \_\_\_\_\_
- The book was so good that I couldn't stop reading it.  
\_\_\_\_\_

- It was \_\_\_\_\_
3. The children were doing their homework when I got home.  
While \_\_\_\_\_
4. She finds it difficult to remember all the story.  
It's \_\_\_\_\_
5. *Sleeping Beauty* is not as interesting as *Beauty and the Beast*.  
*Beauty and the Beast* is \_\_\_\_\_
6. In spite of having no interest in folklore, Sylvia still enjoyed the story.  
Although \_\_\_\_\_
7. My mother last told a fairy tale two years ago.  
It's \_\_\_\_\_
8. I think it would be a good idea if you joined the beginner's class.  
I suggest \_\_\_\_\_
9. Charles Perrault wrote *Cinderella* in French in 1697.  
*Cinderella* \_\_\_\_\_
10. I had a shower and the telephone rang.  
When I \_\_\_\_\_

### MIDDLE TERM TEST

#### A. PHONETICS

Choose the words that have the underlined part pronounced differently from the others.

- |                          |                     |                      |                       |
|--------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>s</u> ound      | B. cl <u>ou</u> d   | C. <u>fo</u> und     | D. fav <u>ou</u> rite |
| 2. A. <u>oo</u> l        | B. <u>no</u> on     | C. <u>do</u> or      | D. sch <u>oo</u> l    |
| 3. A. <u>kn</u> ow       | B. <u>sh</u> ow     | C. <u>no</u> w       | D. <u>lo</u> w        |
| 4. A. <u>cr</u> afts     | B. <u>co</u> mics   | C. str <u>ee</u> ts  | D. st <u>am</u> ps    |
| 5. A. <u>men</u> tion    | B. <u>que</u> stion | C. <u>ac</u> tion    | D. <u>edu</u> cation  |
| 6. A. <u>lei</u> sure    | B. <u>plea</u> sure | C. <u>en</u> sure    | D. <u>mea</u> sure    |
| 7. A. <u>mi</u> nority   | B. <u>eth</u> nic   | C. <u>tradi</u> tion | D. <u>relig</u> ion   |
| 8. A. <u>re</u> cognised | B. <u>desig</u> ned | C. <u>dis</u> played | D. <u>ent</u> ered    |
| 9. A. <u>co</u> untry    | B. cl <u>ou</u> d   | C. <u>lou</u> dly    | D. <u>mo</u> use      |
| 10. A. <u>ca</u> mel     | B. <u>cat</u> tle   | C. <u>pad</u> dy     | D. <u>bu</u> ffalo    |
| 11. A. <u>popu</u> lated | B. <u>load</u> ed   | C. <u>har</u> vested | D. <u>live</u> d      |
| 12. A. <u>no</u> rmal    | B. <u>visi</u> tor  | C. <u>tran</u> sport | D. <u>cho</u> re      |
| 13. A. <u>no</u> mad     | B. <u>bad</u> ly    | C. <u>ad</u> ore     | D. <u>lan</u> guage   |
| 14. A. <u>beh</u> aved   | B. <u>bo</u> red    | C. <u>hop</u> ed     | D. <u>tri</u> ed      |
| 15. A. <u>loo</u> ked    | B. <u>coo</u> ked   | C. <u>na</u> ked     | D. <u>boo</u> ked     |

#### B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Choose A, B, C, D for each gap in the following sentences.

1. My mother enjoys \_\_\_\_\_ traditional food for our family, especially at Tet holiday.  
A. cook                      B. to cook                      C. cooking                      D. cooke
2. My father sometimes goes \_\_\_\_\_ in the forests. He'd like to find some more food for our family.  
A. hunt                      B. hunting                      C. to hunt                      D. hunted
3. Look! Some children are \_\_\_\_\_ the buffaloes.  
A. picking                      B. herding                      C. driving                      D. playing
4. The sky is \_\_\_\_\_ here in the countryside because there are no buildings to block the view.  
A. tidy                      B. close                      C. dense                      D. vast
5. Is living in the city \_\_\_\_\_ than living in the country?  
A. more convenient                      B. as convenient  
C. most convenient                      D. so convenient
6. He is surprised \_\_\_\_\_ that there are 54 ethnic groups in our country.  
A. to understand                      B. to study                      C. to know                      D. find
7. The Viet (or Kinh) have \_\_\_\_\_ number of people, account for about 86% of the population.  
A. large                      B. the large                      C. larger                      D. the largest
8. \_\_\_\_\_ ethnic group has a larger population, the Tay or the Ede?



## II. Use the gerund of the verbs in the box to complete the sentences.

play; listen; eat; do; collect; ride; take; wash; watch; write

1. My sister enjoys \_\_\_\_\_ aerobics in the morning.
2. Lucia fancies \_\_\_\_\_ emails after dinner.
3. In his free time, Quang likes \_\_\_\_\_ photographs.
4. Are you interested in \_\_\_\_\_ handball, Peter?
5. Vinh's brother loves \_\_\_\_\_ foreign coins, doesn't he?
6. David hates \_\_\_\_\_ a bike to school on rainy days.
7. I prefer \_\_\_\_\_ DVDs to going to cinema.
8. Nam detests \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes every day.
9. We don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ to classical music.
10. The Robinsons adore \_\_\_\_\_ Vietnamese food.

## III. Put the verbs in the brackets into infinitive (V/to V) or gerund (V-ing).

1. John dislikes **(work)** \_\_\_\_\_ in front of a computer all day.
2. I'd like **(visit)** \_\_\_\_\_ the Viet Nam Museum of Ethnology this weekend.
3. I'd rather **(make)** \_\_\_\_\_ crafts than listen to music.
4. Minh loves **(help)** \_\_\_\_\_ her parents with DIY projects.
5. Quang hates **(take)** \_\_\_\_\_ the dog for a walk.
6. We all adored **(do)** \_\_\_\_\_ aerobics when we were young.
7. You should **(play)** \_\_\_\_\_ sports to keep fit.
8. They don't need **(watch)** \_\_\_\_\_ that programme if they don't like it.
9. Do you fancy **(socialize)** \_\_\_\_\_ with friends?
10. My brother prefers **(surf)** \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet.

## IV. Complete these sentences with "used to" or "didn't use to".

1. My father gave up smoking two years ago. He **(smoke)** \_\_\_\_\_ a packet of cigarettes a day.
2. There **(be)** \_\_\_\_\_ a movie theater here but it closed a long time ago.
3. Mr. An **(not/ drink)** \_\_\_\_\_ coffee when he was young but he likes it now.
4. Peter **(have)** \_\_\_\_\_ a motorbike, but last month he sold it and bought a car.
5. I **(not/ like)** \_\_\_\_\_ her but we are best friends now.
6. They came to live in the city last year. They **(live)** \_\_\_\_\_ in a small village in the country.
7. My sister **(play)** \_\_\_\_\_ tennis a lot but she doesn't play very often now.
8. When I was a child I **(not/ study)** \_\_\_\_\_ hard.

## V. Complete these sentences with the correct form of adjectives and adverbs comparison.

1. Mary is **(pretty)** as her sister.  
.....
2. A new house is **(expensive)** than an old one.  
.....
3. His job is **(important)** than mine.  
.....
4. Of the four ties, I like the red one **(well)**.  
.....
5. Nobody is **(happy)** than Miss Snow.  
.....
6. Today English is the **(international)** of languages.  
.....
7. John is much **(strong)** than I thought.  
.....
8. Benches are **(comfortable)** than arm- chairs.  
.....
9. Bill is **(good)** than you thought.  
.....



10. Mr Bush is the **(delightful)** person I have ever known.

11. Dick is the **(careful)** of the three workers.

12. Is the book **(interesting)** than the one you read last week?

13. Gold is **(precious)** than iron.

14. The weather today is **(warm)** than the weather yesterday.

15. This film is not **(good)** as the one we saw last week.

### C. READING

#### I. Read the following passage then fill in each blank.

Dear Grandma and Grandpa,

Hi. I'm on holiday (1) ..... Majorca with my friends, Tracy and Sharon. We arrived last Saturday. The first two days the weather wasn't very (2) ....., so we did some sightseeing. We (3) ..... lots of photographs. (4) ..... Wednesday we hired a car and (5) ..... out into the country. We (6) ..... for lunch at a lovely little village and then in the (7) ..... we found a beautiful beach. Last night, we went to (8) ..... disco. We didn't (9) ..... back till about 4 am, so we got up (10) ..... this morning and we decided to have a relaxing day by the hotel swimming pool. So that's where I am now.

#### II. Read the following passage then answer the questions:

Gong culture in the Central Highlands of Viet Nam has been recognized by UNESCO as a Masterpiece of the Intangible Heritage of Humanity. Gong culture covers five provinces of the Central Highlands: Kon Tum, Gia Lai, Dak Lak, Dak Nong and Lam Dong. The masters of gong culture are the ethnic groups of Bahnar, Sedang, Mnong, Coho... The Gong Festival is held annually in the Central Highlands. In the festival, artists from these provinces give gong performances, highlighting the gong culture of their own province. For the ethnic groups of the Central Highlands, gongs are musical instruments of special power. It is believed that every Gong is the symbol of a god who grows more powerful as the Gong gets older. Therefore, gongs are associated with special occasions in people's lives, such as the building of new houses, funerals, crop praying ceremonies... The Gong sound is a way to communicate with the gods.

#### Answer the questions:

1. Where does Gong culture exist?

2. How often is the Gong Festival held?

3. What do artists do in the Gong Festival?

4. Are Gongs pieces of folk music?

5. Is the gong sound a way to communicate with the ancestors?

#### III. Read the passages and write True for (T) of False for (F).

##### His early life

George Washington was born in Virginia. His family owned a big farm and had George didn't have much education. During his life he had three jobs: he was a farmer, a soldier, and a politician. He loved the life of a farmer. He grew tobacco and owned horses. He worked hard but he also liked dancing and going to the theatre. In 1759 he married a widow called Martha Custis. They were happy together, but didn't have any children.

##### His later life

He was Commander-in-Chief of the army and fought the British in the War of Independence. When the war ended in 1781 he was happy to go back to the farm, but his country wanted him to be President. Finally, in 1789, he became President, and gave his name to the new capital city. He started the building of the White

House, but he never lived in it. By 1797 he was tired of politics. He went back to his farm and died there two years later.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ He came from a rich family.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ He loved being a politician.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ He worked hard.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ He had a lot of other interests.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ He had a good education.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ He married, but didn't have any children.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ He was in office for eight years.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ He was happy to live and work on the farm.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Finally he was tired of politics and resigned.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Americans loved him very much.

#### IV. Read the passage and complete the sentences below.

A horse on board the Enterprise was perhaps the first and only horse ever to save the lives of its shipmates. The Enterprise was sailing for North Carolina. She carried a mixed cargo, and there were fifteen passengers on her. She was making good time until at dawn, she struck something. Water poured into the ship. The holds were soon flooded. Frightened men and women climbed the rigging to save their lives. The crew tried to pump the holds out, but with no luck. Then the cargo caught fire. All those on board thought they would die.

The captain knew the coast was near. But how near? Perhaps if the horse could reach land, the people could, too. The horse was led to the side and pushed over. The horse did reach land. In fact, it almost waded ashore! The people soon followed. All were saved, thanks to a nameless horse.

1. There were \_\_\_\_\_ people on the Enterprise.
2. The ship was wrecked at \_\_\_\_\_.
3. When water poured in, the crew tried to \_\_\_\_\_ the holds.
4. The horse was pushed overboard in the hope that it could \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The horse got ashore almost by \_\_\_\_\_.

#### V. Read the passage then answer the questions.

The Youth and Young Pioneers Organization was founded in Vietnam on March 26<sup>th</sup>, 1931. It builds character, and encourages good citizenship and personal fitness.

The Y & Y has many plans to help the community. It encourages all members to take part in different programs.

The recycling program can help people save natural resources. The "Rosy Smile" program helps raise fund for the poor children. The "Green Sunday" program makes the city more beautiful with clean streets, plenty of trees and flowers. It gives more green color to the city and it is done on Sunday so it has the name "Green Sunday".

There are some more helpful programs such as "helping the elderly and street children", "supporting cultural-sport", "young scientists", etc....

1. When was the Y & Y founded?  
.....
2. What does it build?  
.....
3. What does it encourage?  
.....
4. Why is it named "Green Sunday"?  
.....
5. What does the recycling help?  
.....

#### D. WRITING

##### I. Complete each sentence so it means the same as the sentence above.

1. Cats cannot swim as well as dogs.  
→ Dogs can swim .....

2. Minh really loves to hang out with friends.  
→ Minh really enjoys .....
3. Playing beach games is very interesting.  
→ It is .....
4. He uses all his free time to look after his garden.  
→ He spends.....

**II. Complete each sentence so it means the same as the sentence above. Use "Used to".**

1. They once started these machines by hand.  
→ They used to .....
2. He doesn't get up late anymore.  
→ He .....
3. I don't listen to the radio any more.  
→ I used to .....
4. They don't have a dog any more.  
→ They used to .....
5. My brother doesn't serve in the army any longer.  
→ My brother used to .....
6. Barbara is not as keen on travel as she used to be.  
→ Barbara used to .....
7. When he was young, he usually did morning exercise in the park.  
→ He used to .....
8. The man often spent his holiday in the mountain when he was young.  
→ The man used to .....
9. Before he had the car, he went to work by bike.  
→ Before he had the car, he used to .....
10. When I was young, I usually get up early.  
→ I used to .....

**TEST YOURSELF 2**

**I. Choose the word that has underlined part pronounced differently from the test.**

- |                         |                     |                      |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. a. sticky            | b. fairy            | c. story             | d. reply            |
| 2. a. honest            | b. human            | c. hero              | d. historian        |
| 3. a. looked            | b. stopped          | c. screamed          | d. missed           |
| 4. a. <u>character</u>  | b. <u>church</u>    | c. <u>choose</u>     | d. <u>cheerful</u>  |
| 5. a. <u>procession</u> | b. <u>confusion</u> | c. <u>production</u> | d. <u>tradition</u> |

**II. Choose the word that has different stress pattern.**

- |                    |                |                |                |
|--------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. a. anniversary  | b. celebration | c. ceremony    | d. politician  |
| 2. a. lantern      | b. princess    | c. emperor     | d. incense     |
| 3. a. reunite      | b. defeat      | c. command     | d. swallow     |
| 4. a. preservation | b. communicate | c. commemorate | d. participate |
| 5. a. cunning      | b. unkind      | c. greedy      | d. generous    |

**III. Filling each blank with a suitable word. The first letter of the word has been provided.**

1. Tet, or Lunar New Year, is the most important f\_\_\_\_\_ in Vietnam.
2. In the UK, there are a lot of c\_\_\_\_\_ for table manners.
3. Most Vietnamese people have family altars to w\_\_\_\_\_ their ancestors.
4. Saint Giong is a mythical h\_\_\_\_\_ who helped King Hung to defeat the An.
5. It's important to p\_\_\_\_\_ our culture for future generations.
6. *Xoan* singing is traditional f\_\_\_\_\_ singing originating from the northern province of Phu Tho.
7. *The Fox and the Grapes* is one of the most popular f\_\_\_\_\_.
8. At the beginning of the festival, they p\_\_\_\_\_ a ritual of offering incense.
9. Millions of Japanese visit hometowns for family r\_\_\_\_\_ during the Obon Festival.
10. The o\_\_\_\_\_ demanded the annual sacrifice of a young village girl to satisfy his blood lust.

**IV. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.**

1. The Giong festival is held \_\_\_\_\_ the 9th day of the 4th lunar month.  
a. at                      b. in                      c. on                      d. from

2. Last year, my family \_\_\_\_\_ tradition and travelled abroad during Tet holiday.  
a. broke with      b. passed down      c. kept on      d. handed up
3. The Mid-Autumn Festival is also known as Moon Festival \_\_\_\_\_ Harvest Moon Festival.  
a. but      b. or      c. so      d. and
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ eat squid, duck, or shrimp during Tet because they are seen as bad symbols.  
a. have to      b. should      c. don't have to      d. shouldn't
5. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a traditional story, usually about animals, that teaches a moral lesson.  
a. legend      b. fable      c. folktale      d. fairy tale
6. \_\_\_\_\_ bad luck he had!  
a. How      b. How a      c. What      d. What a
7. My salary is really low; \_\_\_\_\_ I find the work incredibly rewarding.  
a. therefore      b. moreover      c. otherwise      d. nevertheless
8. She tried to remain cheerful \_\_\_\_\_ she had failed the test.  
a. even though      b. because      c. even if      d. despite
9. While Amber \_\_\_\_\_ the tale, her friends were talking about another story.  
a. narrated      b. was narrated      c. was narrating      d. has narrated
10. 'The film was very exciting, but the ending was unexpected.'  
'\_\_\_\_\_ I didn't like its ending.'  
a. It's great!      b. Spot on!      c. Sounds bad!      d. Hold on!

**V. Choose the underlined word or phrase, A, B, C or D that needs correcting.**

1. The custom to carve jack-o'-lanterns can betrace backto an old Irish folk tale.  
A B C D
2. One day a dragon flew over the tower when he heard the princess cry for help.  
A B C D
3. Legends relate to history because they are based on history events and heroes.  
A B C D
4. Itis considered impolite to not take off your shoes before entering a house in Japan.  
A B C D
5. Erin had a three-weeks vacation; therefore he went to Vietnam and took part in some spring festivals.  
B C D A
6. When we arrived at home last night, the children were doing their homework.  
A B C D
7. Because breathing is something we do automatically, so we rarely think about it.  
A B C D
8. Thanks form modern technology, we can now preserve our culture for future generations.  
A B C D
9. Tree Planting Day is very important in Singapore because the country needs to protect it's natural parks and green spaces.  
B C D A
10. The Hung King Temple Festival is annual held in honourof the Hung Kings who are the founders of the nation.  
B C D A

**VI. Write the correct tense or form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. Do Son Buffalo Fighting Festival \_\_\_\_\_ (hold) every year on the 9th day of the eighth lunar month.
2. Everything is going well. We \_\_\_\_\_ (not have) any problems so far.
3. Perfume Festival \_\_\_\_\_ (take) place at the Perfume Pagoda on the 15th day of the 1st lunar month.
4. Little Red Riding Hood \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) through the forest when she met a wicked wolf.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ watch) this programme or can I turn the TV off?
6. My friends and I \_\_\_\_\_ (not play) football at 3p.m yesterday because it was raining hard at that

time.

7. The Hung King Temple Festival \_\_\_\_\_ (recognise) as a national holiday in 2007.
8. When I shouted, they \_\_\_\_\_ (jump) off the roof and \_\_\_\_\_ (run) away.
9. What \_\_\_\_\_ (you/do) when you've spent all your money?
10. The Chinese custom of binding feet to make them smaller \_\_\_\_\_ (cease) in the twentieth century.

**VII. Supply the correct form of the words in brackets.**

1. He calls people sir and madam and he is very \_\_\_\_\_. (respect)
2. In Japan, up until recently, marriages were \_\_\_\_\_ arranged by a special matchmaker. (custom)
3. There is the *Poh Bang* \_\_\_\_\_ by a magician in the temple. (perform)
4. A fairy tale usually involves \_\_\_\_\_ creatures and magic. (image)
5. In the story, a \_\_\_\_\_ rescues Red Riding Hood with his axe. (woodcut)
6. When Alice heard footsteps, she was \_\_\_\_\_ and started to run. (fright)
7. Cinderella's stepmothers was \_\_\_\_\_ and treated her \_\_\_\_\_. (kind - bad)
8. Jack is very bright, but he's also \_\_\_\_\_ of his accomplishments at school. (boast)
9. When Jack was going to the market, he met a \_\_\_\_\_. (magic)
10. She smiled \_\_\_\_\_, waved, and vanished into thin air. (wicked)

**IX. Choose the word which best fits each gap.**

My friends and I are having a (1) \_\_\_\_\_ time at this year's Roswell UFO Festival in New Mexico, USA. It's a four-day event that takes (2) \_\_\_\_\_ every year in early July. Some people believe that an alien (3) \_\_\_\_\_ – a UFO – crashed in a field near Roswell in 1947 and the festival (4) \_\_\_\_\_ that event. Not everyone believes this story, of course, but the festival is still a lot of fun. Everyone dresses up (5) \_\_\_\_\_ aliens for the Alien Costume Competition. The costumes are fabulous and even family pets take part. There are dogs dyed blue and tortoises (6) \_\_\_\_\_ in aluminium foil! Today we're watching the (7) \_\_\_\_\_ down Main Street and tomorrow the firework display starts at 9 pm. They say it's really amazing. (8) \_\_\_\_\_ are some of the aliens you meet.

- |                  |              |              |               |
|------------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. a. terrible   | b. fantastic | c. leisure   | d. difficult  |
| 2. a. break      | b. part      | c. place     | d. time       |
| 3. a. spaceship  | b. race      | c. custom    | d. planet     |
| 4. a. symbolizes | b. performs  | c. organizes | d. celebrates |
| 5. a. of         | b. as        | c. with      | d. by         |
| 6. a. covered    | b. filled    | c. included  | d. carved     |
| 7. a. companion  | b. scenery   | c. parade    | d. heritage   |
| 8. a. Such       | b. Much      | c. Neither   | d. So         |

**X. Read the text carefully, then do the tasks.**

People visiting Spain for the first time can find it difficult to get used to the eating customs of the Spanish. It's not so much the food itself, but the timing of the meals that visitors aren't used to. I used to live in Cadiz myself for a few years and I actually quite like the way they do things. Breakfast is a light continental affair – just a roll and some coffee usually – eaten between 8 and 9.30 a.m. The main meal of the day is lunch, which people usually eat sometime between 1.30 p.m. and 3.30 p.m. Quite a few of the shops, museums and galleries close around this time, because the locals like to take time over lunch. They will rest for a short time afterwards, although the traditional afternoon siesta is not as common as it used to be. People eat late in the evening – rarely before 9 p.m. and at the weekend the locals often won't eat before 11 p.m. or even midnight. This is a much lighter meal than lunch – often just a few tapas taken with a drink.

**A. Decide whether the following sentences are true or false.**

1. Mealtimes in Spain can be confusing for visitors.
2. In Spain, breakfast is the largest meal of the day.
3. Spaniards like to have a long lunch.
4. The entire country closes up shop from about 1:30 to 3:30 p.m.
5. Most Spaniards still enjoy taking a siesta after lunch.
6. Dinner is generally eaten between 9 p.m. and midnight.

**B. Choose the correct answers.**

1. What is the passage mainly about?  
a. Spanish culture  
b. Spanish eating customs  
c. Spanish table manners  
d. Spanish mealtimes

2. What does the word "siesta" mean?  
a. a light meal                      b. a short nap                      c. an afternoon snack                      d. a deep sleep
3. Which is the most important meal of the day in Spain?  
a. breakfast                      b. lunch                      c. snack                      d. dinner
4. What is a continental breakfast?  
a. a full breakfast of cereal, bacon and eggs and toast  
b. a traditional breakfast consisting of rice, soup, fish  
c. a simple breakfast consisting of coffee and bread  
d. a healthy breakfast of fruits, veggies and milk
5. According to the passage, \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. Spaniards don't often eat their evening meal anytime before 9 pm  
b. Dinner is always served with tapas and wine  
c. The locals usually eat dinner after 11pm  
d. Dinner is also as large as lunch

**XI. Make sentences, using the words or phrases provided. You can add some words or make changes.**

1. Pingxi Lantern Festival/ celebrate/ the fifteenth day/ the first lunar month
2. Today's children/ hardly/ listen/ stories/ their elder/ because/ they/ live/ the digital era
3. *Little Red Riding Hood*/ have/ important lessons/ the dangers/ talk/ strangers
4. Once/ time/ there/ beautiful princess/ who/ not live/ castle
5. When/ Cinderella/ enter/ the palace/ everybody/ dance/ happily
6. My family/ have/ custom/ visit/ pagodas/ the first day/ lunar New Year
7. Visitors/ make offerings/ incense, flowers and fruits/ worship Buddha/ the pagoda.
8. Most of the children/ like/ imagine/ visualize/ the stories/ while/ listen/ the folktales/ especially/ the fairy tales

**ANSWER KEYS**

**UNIT 1 LEISURE ACTIVITIES**

**TEST 1 UNIT 1**

- |              |                   |                  |             |                |              |       |       |
|--------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------|----------------|--------------|-------|-------|
| <b>I.</b>    | 1. D              | 2. D             | 3. A        | 4. B           | 5. B         |       |       |
|              | 6. C              | 7. D             | 8. A        | 9. C           | 10. C        |       |       |
|              | 11. A             | 12. C            | 13. B       | 14. D          |              |       |       |
| <b>II.</b>   | 1. C              | 2. A             | 3. B        | 4. D           | 5. C         |       |       |
| <b>III.</b>  | 1. C              | 2. A             | 3. A        | 4. C           | 5. B         | 6. A  |       |
|              | 7. C              | 8. C             | 9. B        | 10. B          | 11. C        | 12. D | 13. B |
|              | 14. B             | 15. A            | 16. A       | 17. C          |              |       |       |
| <b>IV.</b>   | 1. making         | 2. Have – ridden | 3. go       |                |              |       |       |
|              | 4. seeing/ to see | 5. skateboarding |             |                |              |       |       |
| <b>V.</b>    | 1. doing          | 2. swimming      | 3. going    |                |              |       |       |
|              | 4. playing        | 5. watching      | 6. skiing   |                |              |       |       |
| <b>VI.</b>   | 1. f              | 2. e             | 3. g        | 4. b           | 5. h         |       |       |
|              | 6. i              | 7. j             | 8. d        | 9. c           | 10. a        |       |       |
| <b>VII.</b>  | 1. friendly       | 2. orphan        | 3. humorous | 4. extremely   | 5. beautiful |       |       |
|              | 6. lucky          | 7. peaceful      | 8. lovely   | 9. generous    | 10. helpful  |       |       |
| <b>VIII.</b> | 1. at             | 2. out of        | 3. between  | 4. in – beside |              |       |       |
|              | 5. after          | 6. under         | 7. beneath  | 8. on - above  |              |       |       |
| <b>IX.</b>   | 1. T              | 2. T             | 3. F        | 4. F           | 5. T         |       |       |
| <b>X.</b>    | 1. Yes, he does.  |                  |             |                |              |       |       |



2. On starry nights, they lie on the grass, looking at the sky and daring each other to find the Milky Way.

3. I like to live in the countryside because it is quiet and peaceful.

- XI.** 1. C            2. B            3. A            4. B            5. C  
6. B            7. C            8. A            9. C            10. B

- XII.** 1. What does she look like?  
2. She is not as easy-going as Mai.  
3. They prefer the outside to the classroom.  
4. I spend most of my time with Hoa.  
5. The sun rises in the East.  
6. Lan received a letter from her friend yesterday.  
7. She is not old enough to get married.  
8. She is a nice girl with long hair.

#### TEST 2 UNIT 1

- I.** 1. B    2. C    3. D    4. A

**II.**

1. read: a newspaper, a magazine, an e-mail
2. go: swimming, shopping, hiking
3. play : football, the guitar, computer games
4. write : a letter, an e-mail, something interesting
5. listen to : the radio, music, CDs
6. watch : television, a video, a game show, a quiz show
7. go to: school, the cinema, a restaurant, the library
8. visit: friends, cousins
9. do : nothing, something interesting
10. have : a meal, leisure activities, an outdoor activity

**III.**

1. playing    2. watching    3. skiing    4. doing    5. swimming    6. going

**IV.**

1. don't like watching    2. hate standing    3. getting    4. prefer to be  
5. don't mind playing    6. Does he like playing    7. prefers to play  
8. likes scoring    9. doesn't mind watching

**V.**

1. He goes to the cinema.
2. He plays football on Saturday morning.
3. He watches TV (usually a football match).
4. He does his homework.
5. He surfs the Net on Friday afternoon and Sunday evening.

**VI.**

1. Skateboarding became very popular in the 1970s.
2. They are 'freestyle' skateboarding, 'ramp' skateboarding, and 'street-style' skateboarding.
3. It is a combination of freestyle and ramp skateboarding.
4. Because this allowed them to skateboard safely.
5. Yes, I do. Because there are lots of competitions now.

**VII.**

1. In the UK they play football, rugby, tennis and basketball, while in the USA they play American football, athletics, basketball and baseball.
2. They spend over 25 hours a week online.
3. The average teenager in the UK gets about £7 a week pocket money. In the USA it is about \$10.
4. They spend their money on clothes and going out, but magazines, presents and snacks are also important.

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. He c  
she has sixteen online friends on social network websites.

**VIII.**

1. First    2. Second    3. In my opinion    4. Also    5. Beside    6. In addition    7. Finally    8. In short

#### TEST 3 UNIT 1

- I.** 1. d 2. c 3. a 4. d 5. b
- II.** 1. a 2. d 3. b 4. c 5. a 6. d 7. b 8. c 9. b 10. a
- III.** 1.c 2.b 3.c 4.a 5.d 6.c 7.a 8.c 9. b 10. c
- IV.** 1. watching/ to watch 2. travelling/ to travel 3. cycling 4. staying  
5. to read/ reading 6. doing 7. getting/ to get 8. making  
9. eating 10. hanging out
- V.** 1. meeting - to see 2. to drink/ drinking 3. waiting 4. playing/ to play  
5. staying - playing 6. to go 7. making/to make 8. spending  
9. to surf/ surfing – surfing 10. to concentrate - wandering
- VI.** 1. are becoming 2. haven't listened 3. didn't like 4. was founded  
5. spend 6. Have you ever made 7. will listen 8. lying  
9. to arrive 10. watching - reading
- VII.** 1. addictive 2. socialising 3. obesity 4. excited  
5. relaxation 6. considerably 7. dissatisfied 8. communication
- VIII.** 1. h 2. g 3. a 4. b 5. c 6. e 7. f 8. d
- IX.** 1. b 2. c 3. d 4. a 5. c
- X.** 1. Mai usually listens to K-pop music in her free time.  
2. When I was a child I enjoyed playing computer games.  
3. My father spends most of his spare time looking after the garden.  
4. Is watching TV the most popular leisure activity in Britain?  
5. Many teenagers are addicted to the Internet and computer games.  
6. She got hooked on the medical drama after watching the first episode.  
7. Most of my friends prefer playing sports to surfing the net.  
8. In today's world, teenagers rely on technology more than the past

## UNIT 2: LIFE IN THE COUNTRYSIDE

### TEST 1 UNIT 2

- I.** 1. B 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. A  
6. B 7. C 8. C 9. A 10. B
- II.** 1. A 2. D 3. B 4. D 5. C
- III.** 1. more beautifully 2. hotter 3. crazier 4. more slowly  
5. more 6. less 7. worse 8. better  
9. more attractively 10. bigger
- IV.**

| Adjective | Comparative    | Superlative        |
|-----------|----------------|--------------------|
| expensive | more expensive | the most expensive |
| thick     | thicker        | the thickest       |
| friendly  | more friendly  | the most friendly  |
| fine      | finer          | the finest         |
| thin      | thinner        | the thinnest       |
| difficult | more difficult | the most difficult |
| warm      | warmer         | the warmest        |
| wise      | wiser          | the wisest         |
| easy      | easier         | the easiest        |
| wonderful | more wonderful | the most wonderful |
| sunny     | sunnier        | the sunniest       |
| fat       | fatter         | the fattest        |
| long      | longer         | the longest        |

- V.** 1. cheaper than 2. more effective than 3. more beautiful than  
4. more powerful than 5. taller than 6. heavier than  
7. longer than 8. easier than 9. more comfortable than  
10. more interesting than

- VI.** 1. best 2. happiest 3. faster 4. more colourful 5. better  
6. good 7. least 8. prettier 9. the better 10. the sicker

- VII.** 1. playing 2. hunting 3. picked 4. collected - was  
5. playing / to play 6. to spend 7. will try 8. to improve  
9. underline - to learn 10. move/ to move 11. gets – got 12. being

- VIII.** 1. collection 2. inconvenient 3. skillful  
4. unsafe 5. friendly 6. healthily

- IX.** 1. peaceful 2. nomadic 3. collector 4. inconvenient  
5. unsafe 6. friendly 7. healthily 8. traditional  
9. generously 10. soundly

- X.** 1. D 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. B 6. B  
7. C 8. D 9. A 10. D 11. C 12. C  
13. D 14. A 15. A 16. C 17. A 18. C  
19. B 20. C

- XI.** 1. D 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. C

- XII.** 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. D

- XIII.** 1. mountain 2. stories 3. with 4. life  
5. any 6. riding 7. to 8. visitors

- XIV.** 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F 6. T

- XV.** 1. Sarah is younger than Tim. 2. Your house is smaller than mine.  
3. Bill is shorter than David. 4. My marks are better than Jack's.  
5. That book is as expensive as this one. 6. My bike is faster than yours.

- XVI.** 1. Her new house isn't so/ as big as her old one.  
2. Peter is the tallest in my class.  
3. The white dress isn't so/ as expensive as the black one. /The white dress is cheaper than the black one.

4. According to me, Maths isn't so/ as easy as English/ Maths is more difficult than English.
5. Mary is the most intelligent in my group.
6. The Nile is the longest river in the world.
7. No mountain in the world is higher than Mount Everest.
8. She is the prettiest girl I have ever met.
9. The more he works, the more tired he feels.
10. That computer doesn't work so/ as well as that one.

### TEST 2 UNIT 2

#### I.

2. collect: food, water, data, information, dolls, postcards
3. pick: grapes, blackberry, strawberry, tea buds,
4. herd: buffaloes, cattle, goats, sheep
5. put up: a flag, a fence, a memorial, a notice

#### III.

1. kites 2. vast 3. ride 4. dry 5. loaded
6. harvest 7. grassland 8. beehive 9. convenient 10. cattle

#### IV.

1. colourful 2. Inconvenient 3. peaceful 4. brave 5. vast
6. nomadic 7. slow 8. safe 9. quiet 10. hard

#### V.

1. bigger than 2. hotter than 3. more expensive than 4. bigger than
5. more intelligent than 6. more important than 7. cheaper than 8. harder than
9. better than 10. worse than

#### VI.

1. cheaper than 2. more effective than 3. more beautiful than 4. taller than
5. heavier than 6. longer than 7. easier than 8. easier than
9. more comfortable than 10. more interesting than

#### VIII.

1. more soundly 2. more healthily 3. more traditionally 4. better
5. more generously 6. more quickly 7. more optimistically 8. more badly

#### IX.

1. Nick writes essays more carefully than Phuc (does).
2. A snail moves more slowly than a crab (does).
3. My father explained the subject more clearly than my brother (did).
4. My cousin sings better than I do/me.
5. Phong swims faster than Phuc (does).

#### X.

1. peaceful 2. nomadic 3. collector 4. inconvenient 5. unsafe
6. friendly 7. healthily 8. traditional 9. generously 10. soundly

#### XI.

1. C 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C

#### XII.

1. D 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. A 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. D 10. B

#### XIII.

1. D 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. C

### TEST 3 UNIT 2

#### I.

1. c 2. c 3. b 4. a 5. d

#### II.

1. d 2. b 3. b 4. c 5. a 6. d 7. a 8. b 9. c 10. d

#### III.

1. c 2. h 3. g 4. e 5. b 6. a 7. d 8. f 9. j 10. i

#### IV.

1. exciting 2. quiet 3. vast - fresh 4. inconvenient 5. optimistic
6. envious 7. generous 8. brave 9. skillful 10. peaceful

#### V.

- ride: a donkey, a horse, a camel, a bike, a motorcycle

**-herd:** sheep, cattle, buffaloes, cows, goats

**-collect:** hay, rice straw, grass, rainwater, stamps

**-pick:** strawberries, flowers, grapes, roses, lettuces

**-put up:** a fence, a tent, a building, a memorial, a poster

- VI.** 1. hard 2. slow 3. angry 4. quietly 5. commonly  
6. brave 7. brightly 8. stressful 9. fast 10. generous

- VII.** 1. more carefully 2. more boring 3. earlier 4. better  
5. more confident 6. deep 7. more soundly 8. healthier  
9. fresher 10. more clearly

- VIII.** 1. more important 2. worse 3. more clearly 4. well  
5. better 6. easier 7. more simply 8. later  
9. narrower 10. earlier 11. more fluently 12. more intelligent  
13. more boring 14. faster 15. happy

- IX.** 1. are playing 2. arrives 3. spent 4. hasn't ridden  
5. are grazing 6. have been 7. lived 8. doesn't excite  
9. to visit 10. driving

- X.** 1. enjoyment 2. farmers 3. larger 4. peaceful  
5. bravery 6. uncomfortable 7. convenience 8. traditionally  
9. populated 10. unforgettable

- XI.** 1. e 2. c 3. g 4. f 5. h 6. b 7. a 8. d

- XII.** 1. c 2. d 3. a 4. b 5. a 6. d 7. c 8. b

- XIII.** 1. b 2. c 3. a 4. d 5. c 6. c

- XIV.** 1. The writer comes from a small village.  
2. No, he doesn't.  
3. He prefers village life because it's very quiet.  
4. He thinks the people in his village are friendly.  
5. The disadvantage of living in the village is transport.  
6. He goes to school by bus.  
7. No, he doesn't.  
8. He is interested in wildlife photography.

### UNIT 3: PEOPLES OF VIET NAM

#### TEST1 UNIT 3

- I.** 1. D 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. B 6. D 7. A 8. A  
**II.** 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. A  
**III.** 1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. B  
8. C 9. A 10. C 11. C 12. B 13. C 14. A  
15. D 16. C 17. A 18. B 19. B 20. C 21. D  
22. C 23. B 24. C 25. D 26. A 27. C 28. B  
29. D 30. A

- IV.**
- |                              |                          |                        |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. the person                | 2. the only cinema       | 3. a Thames barge      |
| 4. the British Museum        | 5. church                | 6. a milk jug          |
| 7. The Prime Minister        | 8. Computer              | 9. an open-air theatre |
| 10. the a thousand pounds    | 11. under the impression | 12. a hurry            |
| 13. at a profit              | 14. on the whole         | 15. on the average     |
| 16. in pain                  | 17. out of danger        | 18. in the way         |
| 19. the cross- channel ferry | 20. the back of my neck  |                        |

- V.**
- |                |                   |                |             |
|----------------|-------------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. unhealthily | 2. multicultural  | 3. mountainous | 4. communal |
| 5. socialise   | 6. addicted       | 7. trainer     | 8. envious  |
| 9. nomads      | 10. traditionally |                |             |

- V.** 1. A 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. C

- VI.** 1. A 2. D 3. B 4. A  
5. A 6. D 7. C 8. C  
6. A 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. A

### TEST 2 (UNIT 3)

- I.**  
1. D 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. C 8. C 9. B 10. D

- II.**  
1. cultural heritage 2. Information 3. ethnic groups 4. research  
5. a tour 6. display area 7. stilt house 8. little bridges

- III.**  
1. mountainous 2. Agricultural 3. traditional 4. diversity 5. peaceful

- IV.**  
1. home 2. dress 3. at 4. with 5. ethnic  
6. for 7. valleys 8. provide 9. villages 10. Their

- V.**  
1. When was the house chosen for the background of the film?  
2. Where is the house?  
3. What is the film about?  
4. Why was she raised by her stepmother?  
5. When did she begin to look for her birth mother?

- VI.**  
1. How many inhabitants does the Ha Nhi group have?  
2. Where do they live?  
3. Who do they (mainly) worship?  
4. What do they live on?  
5. What do they use to work in the fields?  
6. Where are the gardens?

- VII.**  
1. B 2. C 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. A 7. B 8. D

- VIII**  
1. It is located in Duong Lam commune at a 45 km distance from Hanoi.  
2. It is the birthplace of two kings in the history of Vietnam, Phung Hung (or Bo Cai Dai Vuong) and Ngo Quyen.  
3. It is typical for villages in the midlands in the North of Vietnam.  
4. There are still nearly old 200 houses.  
5. Phung Hung Temple, Ngo Quyen Royal Tomb, Mong Phu communal house, Ho Gam Hill, and the temple at which the diplomat Giang Van Minh is worshiped.

- IX.**  
1. The Cham ethnic group has a population of about 100,000.



- 2.They live mostly on the coast between Ninh Thuan and Binh Thuan provinces, or on the Cambodian border around Chau Doc.
- 3.The Cham have a tradition of wet rice cultivation.
- 4.Handicrafts are fairly well-developed, especially silkworm textiles and handmade pottery wares.
- 5.Both men and women wear long one-piece sarongs or cloth wrappers.
- 6.The main color of their daily dress is cotton white.
- 7.The chief means of transporting goods and farm produce is the back-basket.
- 8.The most important festival, called Bon Kate, is held near the Cham towers in the tenth month of the Lunar year.

### TEST 3 UNIT 3

- I.** 1. c 2. d 3. c 4. b 5. a
- II.** 1. a 2. b 3. c 4. d 5. c 6. a 7. b 8. d 9. c 10. b
- III.** 1. stilt houses 2. speciality 3. diverse 4. unique  
5. folk dances 6. costume 7. heritage site 8. ornaments  
9. terraced fields 10. Ethnic minorities
- IV.** 1. Which 2. How many 3. What 4. Whose 5. Where  
6. How often 7. Who 8. How far 9. What 10. When
- V.** 1. Who is the girl with a shawl on her head?  
2. How many main festivals do the Khmer have in a year?  
3. Which is the smallest ethnic group in Vietnam?  
4. What is the biggest festival of Khmer people?  
5. Where can we find terraced fields?  
6. How far is it from Bom Bo village to Ho Chi Minh city? / How far is Bom Bo village from Ho Chi Minh city?  
7. Why did they build their houses on stilts?  
8. What is the population of the Tay ethnic group?  
9. How long have the Tay lived in Vietnam?  
10. Where do the M'ngong mainly live?
- VI.** 1. a 2. the 3. a 4. an 5. the 6. – 7. a - an 8. an 9. the - the  
10. The - (–) 11. a - the 12. The - (–) - the
- VII.** 1. peacefully 2. celebrated 3. majority 4. communal  
5. Embroidery 6. speciality/ specialty 7. mountainous 8. Woven  
9. ethnicities 10. culturally
- VIII.** 1. about 2. for 3. on 4. in - in 5. for 6. at 7. of 8. to 9. for 10. of
- IX.** 1. came 2. belong 3. starts - ends  
4. Are... speaking 5. has learnt 6. have been - have never visited  
7. will organize 8. were built 9. riding  
10. to work/ work
- X.** 1. d 2. g 3. b 4. f 5. h 6. e 7. a 8. c
- XI.** 1. There are 54 ethnic groups in Vietnam.  
2. The Kinh people mostly live in the Red River delta, the central coastal delta, the Mekong delta and major cities.  
3. The population of the Tay is about 1 million.

4. Brau, Roman and Odu have the smallest population.

5. Most ethnic peoples live on wet rice cultivation.

6. No, they don't.

7. The culture of each ethnic group is diverse and special.

**XII.** 1. ethnic 2. diversity 3. including 4. viewed 5. which  
6. display 7. homes 8. throughout

**II. A.** 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. F 6. T

**B.** 1. The population of the Muong is 1.3 million people.

2. The Muong mostly live in Hoa Binh and Thanh Hoa.

3. Wet rice is the main food product of the Muong.

4. They are the gong, the flute, the two-string violin, the drum and the panpipe.

**XIII.** 1. Vietnam is a multiethnic country with 54 ethnic groups.

2. Ethnic minorities make up about 15 percent of the population of Vietnam.

3. Most of the ethnic minorities live in the mountainous areas in the north.

4. The Tay are the second largest ethnic group in Vietnam.

5. The Nung are known for their richness of folk-art traditions including music and poetry.

6. The Dao people speak a language of Hmong-Dao language system.

7. The costume of the Nung is not as colourful as that of other ethnic groups.

8. The Ede live in wooden longhouses built on stilts in villages known as *buon*.

### TEST YOURSELF1

**I.** 1. d 2. c 3. b 4. d 5. a

**II.** 1. b 2. d 3. d 4. c 5. a

**III.** 1. c 2. d 3. c 4. d 5. a 6. a 7. b 8. a 9. c 10. d

**IV.** 1. Have you ever taken 2. provide 3. spent 4. has been  
5. is practising 6. Did your family move 7. are produced 8. are going to visit  
9. coming 10. to herd

**V.** 1. addiction 2. nomads 3. further/ farther 4. populated  
5. traditionally 6. socialise 7. weavers 8. festivities

**VII.** 1. g 2. h 3. d 4. f 5. e 6. a 7. b 8. c

**VIII. A.** 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T 6. F

**B.** 1. The other name of the Hmong is Meo.

2. The Hmong came to Vietnam at the beginning of the 19th century.

3. The Hmong of Sa Pa are called Black Hmong because of their predominantly black clothing.

4. The Hmong grow rice on terraces.

5. The products of the Hmong people are handwoven indigo-dyed cloth, paper, silver Jewellery, leather goods, baskets and embroidery.

6. Their legends, songs, folklore and proverbs have been passed down from one generation to the next through the spoken word.

**IX.** 1. It's very exciting to fly a kite in the countryside.

2. I started to do/ doing voluntary work three years ago.

3. I spent two hours walking to her village.

4. The Museum of Ethnology is visited by millions of tourists every year.

5. Jane's sister doesn't make crafts as well as Jane does.

6. Amy suggested going to her uncle's farm at the weekend./ Amy suggested we (should) go to her uncle's farm at the weekend.

## UNIT 4: CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS

### TEST 1 UNIT 4

**I.** 1. B 2. C 3. D 4. C 5. B

6. C 7. A 8. D 9. C 10. B

**II.** 1. D 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. B

**III.** 1. A 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. A

6. A 7. C 8. B 9. D 10. D

**IV.** 1. A 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. C

6. B 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. D

11. D 12. B 13. A 14. C 15. C

**V.** 1. don't have to 2. should 3. don't have to 4. shouldn't 5. should  
6. should 7. should 8. have to 9. should 10. have to

**VI.** 1. This switch should not be touched.  
2. You shouldn't put so much salt in the soup.  
3. You shouldn't drink so much alcohol.  
4. You shouldn't trip over the step into the kitchen.  
5. You shouldn't park here because it's a restricted area.  
6. I should have been told about these changes earlier.  
7. You shouldn't lean against the newly-painted wall.  
8. You shouldn't smoke too many cigarettes.  
9. Children should go to bed early.  
10. You shouldn't stay up late.

**VII.** 1. D 2. C 3. A 4. B

5. D 6. C 7. B 8. A

**VIII.** 1. His father 2. A Christmas present  
3. \$20.00 4. A brooch  
5. He wraps it in Christmas paper 6. Because she thinks she sees a real spider  
7. Spiders are his favourite pets 8. under the Christmas tree

**IX.** 1. You should wear a warm coat. 2. I think you should leave early.  
3. You should take more exercise. 4. I think you should read a lot.  
5. You should do that. 6. I think you should ride a bike.  
7. I think you should buy a dog.

**X.** 1. don't → doesn't 2. went → go  
3. lives → live 4. hasn't → doesn't have  
5. enough strong → strong enough 6. a full of flowers garden → a garden full of  
7. no → aren't 8. for → to  
9. greens → green 10. is → are

### TEST 2 UNIT 4

**I.** 1. C 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. D 6. D 7. C 8. B 9. A 10. A

**II.** 1. You shouldn't drink at a dinner party until everyone is served.

2. You should raise your drink and say "kampai!" (cheers) before you drink.
3. You should use a small wet cloth at most Japanese restaurant to wash your hands before eating.
4. You shouldn't use it as a napkin or to touch any part of your face.
5. You should use chopsticks during the meal
6. You shouldn't tip in any situation in Japan.

### III.

31. should    32. should    33. have to    34. should    35. have to  
 36. don't have to    37. should    38. don't have to    39. shouldn't    40. should

### IV.

1. don't have to get up    2. have to decide    3. don't have to take    4. has to open  
 5. have to talk    6. don't have to send    7. don't have to explain    8. have to stop

### V.

1. should    2. should    3. shouldn't    4. shouldn't    5. should  
 6. shouldn't    7. should    8. shouldn't    9. should    10. should

### VI.

1. You should    2. You should    3. You shouldn't    4. You shouldn't  
 5. You shouldn't    6. You should    7. You should    8. You shouldn't

### VII.

1. In Indonesia.    2. In Samoa.    3. In Muslim countries.  
 4. In Canada and the US.    5. In Korea.

### VIII.

1. False    2. True    3. True    4. False    5. True

### IX.

1. E    2. C    3. B    4. D    5. A    6. T    7. T    8. F    9. T    10. F

### X.

1. True    2. False    3. True    4. False    5. True

### XI.

1. tradition    2. festival    3. celebrations    4. fortune    5. presentation  
 6. activities    7. wishes    8. enjoyment    9. water-throwing    10. heat

### XII.

1. A    2. C    3. D    4. B    5. D    6. A    7. B    8. C

### XIII.

1. The xoe dance has already been considered as a cultural and folklore activity of Thai ethnic people in Hoa Binh Province.
2. Ten centuries ago, xoe was performed on the occasion of the establishment of the hamlets and villages or during the festivals of the Thai ethnic people.
3. Now, it has developed into 36 dances and has become the symbol of solidarity among the ethnic groups in the northwest.
4. The xoe dance is performed by the boys and girls in the hamlets.
5. They hold hands to form a circle and dance together.
6. The musical instruments for the dance include lutes, drums, two-chord fiddles, gongs and cymbals.
7. For the Thai natives, they do not need to learn the xoe dance because they can dance automatically when they grow up.
8. Without the xoe dance, Thai boys and girls do not become lovely couples.

## TEST 3 UNIT 4

- I.**    1. a    2. d    3. b    4. a    5. d  
**II.**    1. c    2. d    3. d    4. c    5. d    6. a    7. c    8. a    9. d    10. B  
**III.**    1. a    2. b    3. d    4. c    5. a    6. d    7. a    8. b    9. c    10. b  
**IV.**    1. c    2. f    3. i    4. g    5. b    6. h    7. e    8. a    9. j    10. d  
**V.**    1. wrapped    2. respect    3. reflects    4. to break    5. passed  
       6. to worship    7. to take    8. to reunite

- VI.** 1. e 2. c 3. a 4. h 5. b 6. g 7. f 8. d
- VII.** 1. shouldn't 2. should 3. shouldn't 4. shouldn't 5. should  
6. should 7. shouldn't 8. should 9. should 10. shouldn't
- VIII.** 1. have to follow 2. has to answer 3. don't have to go 4. Do... have to buy  
5. has to recycle 6. doesn't have to come 7. have to wear 8. Does... have to do  
9. don't have to put 10. have to stop 11. Do... have to take 12. doesn't have to take  
13. had to leave 14. didn't have to 15. don't have to do
- IX.** 1. have to 2. must 3. shouldn't 4. don't have to 5. should  
6. have to 7. mustn't 8. must 9. don't have to 10. should
- X.** 1. about 2. down 3. of 4. on 5. with  
6. off 7. on 8. for 9. at 10. in
- XI.** 1. had 2. causes 3. was worn 4. is giving 5. has travelled - started  
6. have/ has 7. will have 8. eating 9. go 10. to use
- XII.** 1. Traditionally 2. greeting 3. obliged 4. impolite 5. hostess  
6. respectful 7. differs 8. serving 9. generations 10. confusing
- XIII.** 1. g 2. a 3. d 4. h 5. e 6. f 7. b 8. c
- XIV.** 1. The British call the evening meal, dinner, supper or tea.  
2. The British have toast with baked beans.  
3. The Cheddar cheese sport event is held once a year.  
4. The prize is a big round cheese.  
5. Only women can take part in a pancake race.  
6. It is dangerous to eat Christmas pudding because British people put a coin in the mixture.
- XV.** 1. d 2. b 3. c 4. a 5. d
- XVI.** 1. They shouldn't wear hats in the pagoda.  
2. You should ask them about their customs.  
3. Do I have to tip in a coffee shop?  
4. Staff don't need to wear vests in their company.  
5. We should keep our traditional customs.  
6. You must remove your shoes when entering a temple.  
7. You mustn't take photographs at some sacred places.  
8. It's Saturday tomorrow, so Jane doesn't have to get up early.

## UNIT 5: FESTIVALS IN VIET NAM

### TEST 1 UNIT 5

- I.** 1. B 2. D 3. D 4. A  
5. A 6. C 7. D 8. D
- II.** 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. D
- III.** 1. D 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. D 6. A 7. C

8. B      9. C      10. A      11. B      12. B      13. A      14. B      15. B      16. B
17. A      18. A      19. A      20. B      21. D
22. A      23. C      24. B      25. A      26. C      27. A
- IV.** 1. be      2. was having      3. take      4. comment      5. lived/ would have
6. have learnt (have been learning)      7. wouldn't buy
8. did (the children) see      9. playing      10. are waiting
- V.** 1. A      2. B      3. A      4. D      5. D      6. C      7. A      8. C
- VI.** 1. celebrate      2. traditional      3. spring      4. Therefore
5. kept      6. Because      7. However      8. served
- VII.** 1. No, it isn't.
2. Some weeks before the New Year, they dean their houses and paint the walls.
3. They visit their neighbors, friends and relatives.
4. Many different kinds of dishes are served.
- VIII.** 1. A      2. B      3. C      4. A      5. D
- IX.** 1. A      2. B      3. A      4. D      5. C
- X.** 1. mustn't to → must      2. has to → have to
3. is having → was having      4. while → because
- XI.** 1. Lang Lieu couldn't buy any special food, because he was very poor.
2. During Tet, Vietnamese people buy all kinds of sweets, so they make Chung cakes as well.
3. The Hung King Temple Festival was a local festival; however, it has become a public holiday in Viet Nam since 2007.
4. At the Mid-Autumn Festival, kids can sing, dance, and enjoy mooncakes; therefore, every child likes it very much.
5. We cannot swim in this part of the river because the water is highly polluted

#### TEST 2 UNIT 5

- I.**
1. C    2. A    3. C    4. A    5. D    6. D    7. D    8. C
- II.**
1. C    2. B    3. B    4. B    5. A
- III.**
6. B    7. C    8. A    9. D    10. B    11. C    12. C    13. C    14. C    15. A
- IV.**
1. pray    2. celebrate    3. honour/ worship    4. commemorate
5. symbolizes    6. hold    7. perform    8. honour/ worship
- V.**
1. because    2. Moreover    3. Although    4. but
5. When    6. While    7. and    8. so
- VI.**
1. C    2. A    3. D    4. A    5. B    6. C    7. A    8. C
- VII.**
1. C    2. E    3. F    4. B    5. D    6. A
7. It is Chol Chnam Thmay Festival.
8. It is held in mid-April, in 3 days (4 days for the leap year).
9. They prepare new clothes, food and drinks for whole festival days, and they also repair, clean and decorate their house.
10. On the altar, they present 5 flower branches, 5 candles, 5 incense, 5 cereal seeds and fruit crops.
11. Major activities are bathing, dressing nice, bringing sacrifice gifts to the temple in good time which has been selected.
12. They cook rice and bring it to the temple on the second New Year day.
13. They do Buddha bathing and monk-bathing ceremony on the third day.
14. They go to the grave to pray for the souls of those who died.
- VIII.**
1. because    2. when    3. and    4. Moreover    5. and    6. Therefore
7. First    8. Then    9. because    10. because/when    11. if    12. if

**IX.**

1. because      2. When      3. Moreover      4. So      5. Because      6. when      7. Therefore      8. although
9. It is held on 15th day of the eighth lunar month to celebrate biggest full moon in the year.
10. They prepare many different foods – moon cakes, candies, biscuits, jellies, and fruit.
11. They are given many nice lanterns and diverse funny masks.
12. They can light the lanterns during the Mid-Autumn night.
13. Because it takes place when people have had good crops.
14. It is a good example of the traditional culture of the Vietnamese

**X.**

1. While the establishment of the club of Xoan singing in Phu Tho has brought new energy and strength, villagers in these communes give great contribution to the development of the clubs.
2. Valentine Day is not very popular in Viet Nam, yet people in big cities send gifts on that day.
3. Flower buds and blossoms are the symbols for new beginning because these two distinctive flowers are widely sold and purchased during Tet.
4. Homes are often cleaned and decorated before New Year's Eve, and the kitchen needs to be cleaned before the 23rd night of the last month.
5. When street vendors rush into the city center with peach trees on their bicycles, the streets look like moving pink forests.

**XI.**

1. On New Year's Eve, the Vietnamese put fruits on the altar, and they also arrange watermelon and traditional cakes such as chung cakes.
2. While many people go to pagodas or churches on New Year's to pray for the coming year, many others remain in their home in front of the altar to welcome the ancestors through prayer.
3. Although people from Western countries do not follow ancestor worship, ancestor worship is considered a type of religious practices in some Asian countries.
4. Because xoan singing is still in the memory of folk artists in Phu Tho province, they always try their best to hand down offspring the old style of singing in the activities of the clubs. (because)

**XII. King Hung Temple Festival**

1. King Hung Temple Festival takes place yearly at King Hung Temple from the 8th to 11th day of the third lunar month.
2. During the festival, Vietnamese people go to King Hung Temple on Nghia Linh Mountain, Phu Tho Province to take part in this festival.
3. The festival features many folk games such as bamboo swings, rice cooking competitions, lion dance, human chess, water puppet performance, wrestling, crossbow shooting, etc.
4. On the 10th day, a national ceremony is held with participation of about 40 villages.
5. Governmental leaders will lead the procession up to Upper Temple.
6. There is a ceremony of offering incense, five-fruit trays, and specialties such as chung cakes and day cakes, which are two traditional foods of Vietnam.

**XIII.**

1. The Giong Festival is held from the 6th to the 12th of the 4th lunar month in several venues around Ha Noi.
2. The festival commemorates Saint Giong who defeated the An.
3. It is also an opportunity to hope for abundant harvests and happy lives, and express patriotism.
4. During the festival, villagers do the statue bathing, processions of bamboo flowers to Soc Temple.
5. The festival also provides many entertaining activities, including folk games and traditional singing performances.
6. The festival has been recognized by UNESCO as an intangible cultural heritage of mankind.

**TEST 3 UNIT 5****I.** 1. a    2. c    3. b    4. b    5. d**II.** 1. d    2. b    3. a    4. c    5. B**III.** 1. b    2. d    3. a    4. d    5. c    6. b    7. a    8. c    9. b    10. d**IV.** 1. b    2. a    3. c    4. d    5. b    6. a    7. d    8. c    9. b    10. a



- V.** 1. performed 2. offer 3. worshipping 4. commemorate  
5. cheering 6. preserve 7. floating 8. to pray
- VI.** 1. simple 2. compound 3. complex 4. complex 5. compound  
6. simple 7. complex 8. complex 9. compound 10. compound  
11. complex 12. compound 13. simple
- VI.** 1. otherwise 2. but 3. therefore 4. or 5. Moreover  
6. however 7. so 8. and 9. However 10. but
- VII.** 1. decorate 2. fortune 3. incense 4. ceremony 5. crowded  
6. pray 7. offerings 8. defeated
- VIII.** 1. has become 2. was held - became 3. are waiting 4. arranged  
5. has taken 6. were playing 7. come 8. are performed  
9. to attend 10. preparing
- IX.** 1. on 2. in 3. for 4. At 5. with  
6. since 7. for 8. on - for 9. in 10. in
- X.** 1. d 2. c 3. a 4. d 5. c 6. b 7. b 8. a
- XI.** 1. b 2. a 3. d 4. d 5. c 6. c 7. a
- XII.** A. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T 6. T

**B.** 1. Ok Om Bok Festival takes place on the Full Moon day of the tenth month in Vietnamese Lunar Calendar.

2. Ok Om Bok Festival is celebrated for worshipping the Moon.

3. Khmer people float their lanterns on Ba Om Lake.

4. A Ngo boat is 25 - 30 meters long.

5. There are about 40 to 60 boatmen in every "Ngo" boat.

6. Ok Om Bok is an important festival in Khmer people's life because it has sacred meaning in spiritual life of these people.

**XIII.** 1. Hue is far from Hanoi, but Peter often travels to Hanoi by motorbike.

2. Christian went to Soc Trang because he wanted to join Ok Om Bok Festival.

3. Although Sebastien is a French, he plays Vietnamese folk games well.

4. He has to join the festival, so that he can play Vietnamese folk games.

5. We had a good time in spite of the terrible weather.

6. Susan went to the gym three times a week in order to be fit for the skiing.

7. It is two months since my family went to Huong Pagoda Festival.

8. You won't get in to see the show unless you have reserved seats.

9. Brian had an interest in Vietnamese cultural and spiritual events.

10. You should / have to start early; otherwise, you will get stuck in the traffic.

**XIV.** 1. Because the world is getting warmer, polar bears are in danger of becoming extinct.

2. As there weren't enough students, they closed the village school.

3. I really enjoyed the concert although the music was too loud.

4. When he got a creampie smashed in his face, everyone laughed.

5. Paul found somebody's wallet on the ground while he was walking to the bus stop. / While Paul was walking to the bus stop, he found somebody's wallet on the ground.

6. After Jackie is done with her chores, she will take out the trash.
7. If you study for the test, you will do much better.
8. Rex practiced his guitar until he could play the song perfectly.
9. Before we could get back to shore, it started to rain hard.
10. Whenever I saw him, he was always carrying a plastic shopping bag.

- XV.**
1. Where is the Elephant Race Festival usually held?
  2. How many elephants joined the elephant race on March 12 in Lak District?
  3. When does the Lim festival take place?
  4. How long does the spring festival of Bai Dinh Pagoda last?
  5. What was Saint Giong Festival recognized as by UNESCO?
  6. Why is Vu Lan Festival so-called “Xa toi vong nhan” festival?
  7. By whom is the Kate Festival celebrated?
  8. How far is the Perfume Pagoda from Hanoi?
  9. Which festival is held to commemorate the Kings of the Tran dynasty?
  10. What do children commonly do to celebrate the Mid-Autumn Festival?

## UNIT 6: FOLK TALES

### TEST 1 UNIT 6

- |              |                                                                             |                      |                     |                 |               |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| <b>I.</b>    | 1. C                                                                        | 2. B                 | 3. C                | 4. A            | 5. D          |
| <b>II.</b>   | 1. A                                                                        | 2. D                 | 3. C                | 4. B            | 5. C          |
| <b>III.</b>  | 1. at                                                                       | 2. on                | 3. at               | 4. (X)          | 5. (X)        |
|              | 6. (X)                                                                      | 7. (X)               | 8. in               | 9. (X)          | 10. in        |
| <b>IV.</b>   | 1. saw                                                                      | 2. were you doing    | 3. didn't visit     | 4. rained       |               |
|              | 5. was reading                                                              | 6. ate               | 7. were running     | 8. Did you find |               |
|              | 9. did she dance                                                            | 10. were watching    |                     |                 |               |
| <b>V.</b>    | 1. playing                                                                  | 2. Were you studying | 3. doing            | 4. go           |               |
|              | 5. sleeping                                                                 | 6. had               | 7. break            | 8. went         |               |
|              | 9. was                                                                      | 10. turned           |                     |                 |               |
| <b>VI.</b>   | 1. taught/ to ride/ was                                                     |                      | 2. do - go/ drives  | 3. are going to |               |
|              | 4. Did you use to play/ lived                                               |                      | 5. spent/ repairing |                 |               |
| <b>VII.</b>  | 1. went                                                                     |                      | 2. swam             | 3. was drinking | 4. saw 5. was |
|              | 6. beat                                                                     | 7. asked             | 8. told             | 9. stayed       | 10. had       |
| <b>VIII.</b> | 1. “aged”                                                                   |                      |                     |                 |               |
|              | 2. he did not have anyone else to look after him. (/ he was an orphan)      |                      |                     |                 |               |
|              | 3. making and selling buns and cakes                                        |                      |                     |                 |               |
|              | 4. go round the village to sell cakes                                       |                      |                     |                 |               |
|              | 5. his grandmother was not strong enough to work/ his grandmother fell ill. |                      |                     |                 |               |
| <b>IX.</b>   | 1. I began learning English three years ago.                                |                      |                     |                 |               |
|              | 2. I did four exercises last night.                                         |                      |                     |                 |               |
|              | 3. He telephoned his wife at two o'clock.                                   |                      |                     |                 |               |
|              | 4. Mr. Green was in Viet Nam for ten years.                                 |                      |                     |                 |               |
|              | 5. I got up this morning at half past five.                                 |                      |                     |                 |               |
|              | 6. I had bread and omelets had for breakfast this morning.                  |                      |                     |                 |               |
|              | 7. I left home at six o'clock.                                              |                      |                     |                 |               |
|              | 8. I went to school this morning by bicycle.                                |                      |                     |                 |               |
|              | 9. I watched television after my homework last night.                       |                      |                     |                 |               |
|              | 10. I went to bed at ten o'clock last night.                                |                      |                     |                 |               |
| <b>X.</b>    | 1. We were having dinner while they were listening to the radio.            |                      |                     |                 |               |
|              | 2. The fire started when she was sleeping.                                  |                      |                     |                 |               |
|              | 3. What were you doing when it began to rain?                               |                      |                     |                 |               |

4. When the farmer started whistling, he was ploughing the field.
5. What were they doing when you came?
6. What was happening when she came?
7. The man came in when she was reading a book.
8. The volcano erupted when they were working in the field.
9. The lava hit the town when the ship was leaving the harbor.
10. Someone hit the headmaster on the head when he was going to his car.

### TEST 2 UNIT 6

**I.** 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. D

**II.** 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. C 7. A 8. B

**III.** 1. was reading – heard 2. came – was having 3. went – was raining

4. Were you watching – phoned 5. met – was wearing 6. broke – were playing

7. were waiting – arrived 8. was not driving – happened

9. fell – was painting 10. were you doing

**IV.** 1. saw – were trying 2. was walking – felt 3. were driving – appeared

4. was she driving – happened 5. was waiting – came 6. invited – was visiting

7. didn't want – was waiting 8. rang – was watching

9. began – was sitting 10. went – were having

**V.** 1. came – were watering 2. was talking 3. was practicing – was reading

4. were climbing – visited 5. was talking – entered 6. was making – went 7. was crossing – stepped – fell 8. began – was planting 9. arrived – was writing 10. were walking – heard

**VI.** 1. was doing 2. were shopping 3. was chatting 4. were driving 5. was making

6. were cooking 7. was sleeping 8. were having 9. were drinking 10. was trying

**VII.** 1. B 2. D 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. B 7. B 8. D 9. B 10. A

**VIII.** 1. One night her sisters went to a ball at the palace.

2. She felt very sad.

3. Her/The fairy godmother appeared and helped her.

4. She danced with the prince.

5. The prince and Cinderella were married and lived happily ever after.

**IX.** 1. B 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. D 6. B 7. C 8. B 9. D 10. B

### TEST 3 UNIT 6

**I.** 1. c 2. d 3. a 4. b 5. d

**II.** 1. b 2. d 3. a 4. c 5. a 6. b 7. d 8. c 9. a 10. b

**III.** 1. b 2. d 3. e 4. f 5. h 6. g 7. a 8. c

**IV.** 1. cunning 2. generous 3. brave 4. cheerful 5. greedy  
6. cruel 7. wicked 8. evil 9. fierce 10. mean

**V. Characters:** dancer, beast, fairy, knight, dancer, witch, dragon, woodcutter, prince, emperor, ogre, wolf, princess, eagle, tortoise, fox

**Personality:** considerate, brave, greedy, mean, cheerful, cruel, fierce, determined, clever, wise, cunning, loyal, thoughtful, kind, honest

- VI.** 1. enjoyed 2. didn't play 3. travelled 4. Did ... cry  
5. didn't study 6. did ... teach 7. turned 8. told  
9. knew 10. didn't accept 11. Did... visit 12. rang
- VII.** 1. I was playing computer games all day yesterday.  
2. Were your friends waiting for you all that time?  
3. Sid wasn't cleaning his room at 8p.m last night.  
4. We were having dinner when Tim arrived.  
5. Sarah and Luke weren't surfing the Internet at that time.  
6. What was Jack doing while you were cooking dinner?  
7. This time last week my family was/ were visiting my grandmother.  
8. It wasn't snowing when I left.  
9. Were you sleeping when I phoned you last night?  
10. While the children were talking, the teacher came into class.
- VIII.** 1. was playing 2. Were... driving 3. was raining 4. were travelling  
5. wasn't listening 6. was living 7. were... doing 8. wasn't studying  
9. Was... skiing 10. weren't sleeping
- IX.** 1. drove 2. were watching 3. Did you see 4. was playing  
5. made 6. didn't know 7. was your father doing 8. left  
9. were walking 10. wasn't queuing
- X.** 1. joined 2. were lying 3. were they doing  
4. walked - was talking 5. lived - were living 6. did you take - were travelling  
7. was crossing - hit 8. saw - called 9. was doing - was making  
10. came - carried 11. were playing - called 12. said - still tried
- XI.** 1. broke - was driving 2. was looking - saw 3. saw - fell  
4. were trying - stopped 5. Was... smoking - turned 6. was - slept  
7. was running - was having 8. phoned - were sleeping 9. asked - released  
10. were surfing - found 11. was walking - heard 12. were - went  
13. did... go - took 14. arrived - said 15. met - wasn't going - was going
- XII.** 1. on 2. up 3. with 4. for 5. On  
6. about 7. into 8. to 9. into 10. for - at
- XIII.** 1. received 2. were having 3. didn't you answer - was taking  
4. hasn't seen - started 5. is flying - will arrive 6. was raining  
7. was - read 8. Have you ever heard 9. to take  
10. living
- VIII.** 1. g 2. e 3. d 4. h 5. b 6. f 7. a 8. c
- XIV.** 1. a 2. c 3. d 4. b 5. c 6. d 7. a 8. b
- XV. A.** 1. e 2. d 3. a 4. f 5. b 6. c
- B.** 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T 6. F 7. F

- C. 1. Robin Hood was born near the end of the 12th century.  
 2. The England King at the time was cruel and greedy.  
 3. Robin lived with his loyal servants in Sherwood Forest.  
 4. Robin Hood and his servants decided to live in the forest because they didn't want to be slaves of King John.  
 5. There were more than 200 outlaws in Sherwood Forest.  
 6. The people called Robin Hood Saint Robin, and Robin, Sheriff of Sherwood Forest.

- XVI. 1. What an exciting fable!  
 2. It was such a good book that I couldn't stop reading it.  
 3. While the children were doing their homework, I got home.  
 4. It's difficult for her to remember all the story.  
 5. *Beauty and the Beast* is more interesting than *Sleeping Beauty*.  
 6. Although Sylvia has no interest in folklore, she enjoyed the story.  
 7. It's two years since my mother last told a fairy tale.  
 8. I suggest you should join the beginner's class.  
 9. Cinderella was written in French by Charles Perrault in 1697.  
 10. When I was having a shower, the telephone rang.

#### MIDDLE TERM TEST

##### A. PHONETICS

- I. 1. D 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. B  
 6. C 7. A 8. A 9. A 10. D  
 11. D 12. B 13. C 14. C 15. C

##### B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- I. 1. C 2. B 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. C 7. D 8. B  
 II. 1. doing 2. writing 3. taking 4. playing 5. collecting  
 6. riding 7. watching 8. washing 9. listening 10. eating  
 III. 1. working 2. to visit 3. make 4. helping 5. taking  
 6. doing 7. play 8. to watch 9. socializing 10. surfing  
 IV. 1. used to smoke 2. used to 3. didn't use to drink 4. used to have  
 5. didn't use to like 6. used to live 7. used to play 8. didn't use to study  
 V. 1. as pretty 2. more expensive 3. more important 4. best  
 5. happier 6. most international 7. stronger 8. more comfortable  
 9. better 10. most delightful 11. most careful 12. more interesting  
 13. more precious 14. warmer 15. so good

##### C. READING

- I. 1. in 2. nice 3. took 4. on 5. drove  
 6. stopped 7. afternoon 8. a 9. get 10. late  
 II. 1. It exists in the Central Highlands of Viet Nam.  
 2. It is held once a year / annually.  
 3. They give gong performances, highlighting the gong culture of their own province.  
 4. No, they aren't.  
 5. No, it isn't.  
 III. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F  
 6. T 7. F 8. T 9. T 10. T  
 IV. 1. fifteen 2. dawn 3. pump out 4. find the shore 5. wading  
 V. 1. It was founded on March 26<sup>th</sup>, 1931.  
 2. It builds characters.  
 3. It encourages good citizenship and personal fitness.  
 4. It is named "Green Sunday" because it gives more green colors to the city and is done on Sunday.

5. The recycling helps people save natural resources.

#### D. WRITING

- I.** 1. Dogs can swim better than cats.  
2. Minh really enjoys hanging out with friends.  
3. It is very interesting to play beach games.  
4. He spends all his free time looking after his garden.
- II.** 1. They used to start these machines by hand.  
2. He used to get up late.  
3. I used to listen to the radio.  
4. They used to have a dog.  
5. My brother used to serve in the army.  
6. Barbara used to be keen on travel.  
7. He used to do morning exercise in the park when he was young.  
8. The man used to spend his holiday in the mountain when he was young.  
9. Before he had the car, he used to go to work by bike.  
10. I used to get up early when I was young.

#### TEST YOURSELF2

- I.** 1. d 2. a 3. c 4. a 5. b
- II.** 1. c 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. b
- III.** 1. festival 2. customs 3. worship 4. hero 5. preserve  
6. folk 7. fables 8. perform 9. reunion 10. orge
- IV.** 1. c 2. a 3. b 4. d 5. b 6. c 7. d 8. a 9. c 10. b
- V.** 1. A (of carving) 2. A (was flying) 3. D (historical) 4. B (not to take off)  
5. A (three-week) 6. B (arrived) 7. C (Ø) 8. A (Thanks to)  
9. D (its natural) 10. A (annually)
- VI.** 1. is held 2. haven't had 3. takes 4. was walking  
5. Are you watching 6. weren't playing 7. was recognised 8. jumped - ran  
9. will you do 10. ceased
- VII.** 1. respectful 2. customarily 3. performance 4. imaginary 5. woodcutter  
6. frightened 7. unkind - badly 8. boastful 9. magician 10. wickedly
- VIII.** 1. h 2. a 3. d 4. b 5. k 6. g 7. f 8. e 9. i 10. c
- VIII.** 1. b 2. c 3. a 4. d 5. b 6. a 7. c 8. d
- X. A.** 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F 6. T
- B.** 1. d 2. b 3. b 4. c 5. a
- XI.** 1. Pingxi Lantern Festival is celebrated on the fifteenth day of the first lunar month.  
2. Today's children hardly listen to stories from their elder because they are living in the digital era.  
3. Little Red Riding Hood has important lessons about the dangers of talking to strangers.  
4. Once upon a time, there was a beautiful princess who didn't live in a castle.  
5. When Cinderella entered the palace, everybody was dancing happily.  
6. My family have the custom of visiting pagodas on the first day of the lunar New Year.  
7. Visitors make offerings of incense, flowers and fruits to worship Buddha at the pagoda.  
8. Most of the children like to imagine and visualize the stories while listening to the folktales, especially the fairy tales.

#### KEY GRAMMAR

**BÀI TẬP VĂN DUNG CƠ BẢN:****Bài 1: Hoàn thành những câu sau, sử dụng dạng nguyên thể có (to)(toV) của động từ trong ngoặc:**

1. Everyone likes (eat) TO EAT ice cream.
2. Do you prefer (read) TO READ books in your freetime?
3. I hate (watch) TO WATCH horror movies?
4. Many people prefer (go) TO GO travelling on holidays.
5. My father loves (play) TO PLAY golf with his friends.
6. I prefer (not stay) NOT TO STAY up too late.
7. What does your sister love (do) TO DO in her spare time?
8. I used to prefer (hang out) TO HANG OUT with my friends at weekend.
9. I think not many people like (listen) TO LISTEN to her music.
10. Teenagers love (surf) TO SURF the web to while away their freetime.

**Bài 2: Hoàn thành những câu sau, sử dụng dạng danh động từ (V-ing) của động từ trong ngoặc:**

1. My mother dislikes (prepare) PREPARING the meals.
2. Do you enjoy (do) DOING DIY in your freetime?
3. I detest (have) HAVING a conversation with John.
4. Do you think Jane prefers (not socialise) NOT SOCIALISING with other students?
5. I don't mind (explain) EXPLAINING the problem again.
6. Ann fancies (listen) LISTENING to songs of her favourite singer.
7. My friend adores (spend) SPENDING time with her cats.
8. I always love (try) TRYING new things when I go travelling.
9. Mr. Smith hates (drive) DRIVING his old car.
10. Anne prefers (not go) NOT GOING out too late.

**Bài 3: Điền dạng thích hợp của động từ trong ngoặc để hoàn thành các câu sau:**

1. Did you enjoy (watch) WATCHING the comedy last night?
2. Many people prefer (do) DOING/TO DO gardening after their retirement.
3. My cat dislikes (sleep) SLEEPING on the floor.
4. My father doesn't mind (work) WORKING hard.
5. My cousin doesn't like (study) STUDYING/ TO STUDY Math and Chemistry.
6. They dislike (talk) TALKING with each other.
7. Jim and Jane don't fancy (go) GOING out tomorrow.
8. Did you hate (eat) EATING/TO EAT vegetables when you was small?
9. she didn't prefer (tell) TELLING/ TO TELL him about her plan.
10. James enjoys (have) HAVING dinner in a luxury restaurant.
11. I hope my mother will enjoy (spend) SPENDING time with her grandchildren.
12. Some people enjoy (take) TAKING a shower in the morning.
13. I think your brother won't mind (lend) LENDING you a helping hand.
14. My boyfriend dislike (wait) WAITING.
15. What do you detest (do) DOING the most?

Giai thích:

**Bài 4: Dựa vào các từ cho sẵn, viết thành câu hoàn chỉnh:**

1. Peter / prefer/ play/ computer games/ in his free time.  
PETER PREFERS PLAYING / TO PLAY COMPUTER GAMES IN HIS FREE TIME.
2. You/ hate/ do/ the washing?  
DO YOU HATE DOING/ TO DO THE WASHING?
3. My father/ enjoy/ play/ sports/ and/ read/ books.  
MY FATHER ENJOYS PLAYING SPORTS AND READING BOOKS
4. The teacher/ not mind/ help/ you/ with difficult exercises.  
THE TEACHER DOESN'T MIND HELPING YOU WITH DIFFICULT EXERCISES.
5. Jane/ not fancy/ read/ science books.  
JANE DOESN'T FANCY READING SCIENCE BOOKS.
6. Which kind of juice/ you/ dislike/ drink/ the most?



7. Ann/ fancy/ do /DIY/ in her free time.

WHICH KIND OF JUICE DO YOU DISLIKE DRINKING THE MOST?

8. My father/ prefer/ not eat/ out.

MY FATHER PREFERS NOT EATING / NOT TO EAT OUT

9. Mr. Smith/ love/ go/ shopping/ at weekend.

MS. SMITH LOVES GOING/ TO GO SHOPPING AT WEEKENDS

10. Everyone/ adore/ receive/ presents/ on their birthday.

EVERYONE ADORES RECEIVING PRESENTS ON THEIR BIRTHDAYS.

Giải thích: Viết câu ở thì hiện tại đơn để diễn tả sự yêu thích, dùng danh động từ (V-ing) sau những động từ chỉ sự yêu thích như: adore, enjoy, fancy, don't mind, dislike, detest dùng danh động từ (hoặc động từ nguyên thể có "to" sau các động từ: like, love, hate, prefer)

### **BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG NÂNG CAO**

#### **Bài 5: Đánh dấu(V) trước câu đúng, đánh dấu(X) trước câu sai và sửa lại cho đúng:**

1. X My sister doesn't mind **to look** after my cat. --> LOOKING (MIND-V-ING)

2. X Jim **dislikes** going to the library because he likes reading books. --> LIKES (SAI VỀ LOGIC)

3. X I prefer **to not go** out today. --> NOT TO GO (PHỦ ĐỊNH NOT ĐÚNG TRƯỚC TO)

4. I used to like watching cartoons on TV.

5. X Does Mrs. Smith enjoy **to cook**? --> COOKING (ENJOY-V-ING)

6. X Mary hates doing the housework and **take** after her baby sister. --> TAKING (SAU HATE LÀ DOING RỒI NÊN PHẢI ĐỂ DOING SONG SONG CẤU TRÚC)

7. In my freetime, I love to do DIY with my sister.

8. X Josh detests **to socialise** with his co-workers. --> SOCIALISING (DETEST+VING)

9. X Which movie does he fancy **to watch**? --> WATCHING (FANCY+V-ING)

10. I prefer hanging out with friends to playing computer games.

#### **Bài 6: Điền dạng đúng của các động từ cho sẵn vào chỗ trống sao cho hợp lý:**

|           |        |       |          |
|-----------|--------|-------|----------|
| socialize | detest | surf  | write    |
| rely      | read   | adore | Hang out |

1. My brother likes            TO SURF/ SURFING            the Internet looking for new music.

2. I dislike            RELYING            too much on other people. I want to be independent.

3. Josh enjoys            HANGING OUT            with his classmates after school.

4. My sister and I fancy            READING            novels when we have free time.

5. He's very artistic. He enjoys            WRITING            poems in his free time.

6. James            DETESTS            talking with his neighbors because he finds them annoying.

7. My uncle loves            TO SOCIALIZE/ SOCIALIZING            with other people. He has many friends.

8. Ann            ADORES            working with children. She's a teacher.

#### **Bài 7: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng:**

Nowadays, leisure activities are totally different from the past. Many people no longer enjoy (1) in outdoor activities after school. In stead, they (2) playing computer games or (3) the web in their free time. Some people (4) too much on computer and the Internet. For example, they prefer (5) messages to having a face-to-face conversation with friends. Even when people (6) out with their friends, they rarely talk but they use their phones to surf web. However, many people dislike the Internet and the (7) world. They hate to waste time on the computer and (8) other activities such as reading, shopping or sporting.

- |                      |                   |                         |                 |
|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. participate    | B. to participate | <b>C. participating</b> | D. participates |
| 2. <b>A. fancy</b>   | B. don't mind     | C. dislike              | D. hate         |
| 3. A. sailing        | <b>B. surfing</b> | C. swimming             | D. diving       |
| 4. A. play           | <b>B. rely</b>    | C. addict               | D. use          |
| 5. A. send           | <b>B. to send</b> | C. to sending           | D. sends        |
| 6. A. play           | B. rely           | C. meet                 | <b>D. hang</b>  |
| 7. <b>A. virtual</b> | B. real           | C. fake                 | D. new          |
| 8. A. dislike        | B. detest         | <b>C. enjoy</b>         | D. mind         |

#### **Bài 8: Đọc đoạn văn sau và điền (T-true) trước câu đúng với nội dung bài đọc, điền (F-false) trước câu không đúng với nội dung bài đọc:**

       T        1. People enjoy various indoor activities Britain.

       F        2. British people spend more than half of their free time watching television.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The most common leisure activity in the UK is visiting or entertaining friends or relations.  
 F \_\_\_\_\_ 4. All households have at least one television set.  
 F \_\_\_\_\_ 5. British people are all gardeners.  
 T \_\_\_\_\_ 6. All towns in Britain have one or more DIY centers and garden centres.

## UNIT 2

### BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN:

Bài 1: Cho dạng so sánh hơn của các tính từ trong bảng sau:

| Tính từ    | So sánh hơn      | Tính từ   | So sánh hơn    |
|------------|------------------|-----------|----------------|
| Bad        | WORSE            | Modern    | MORE WONDERFUL |
| Clever     | CLEVERER         | Old       | OLDER          |
| Convenient | MORE CONVENIENT  | Peaceful  | MORE PEACEFUL  |
| Far        | FURTHER/ FARTHER | pretty    | PRETTIER       |
| Fresh      | FRESHER          | Quiet     | QUIETER        |
| Friendly   | FRIENDLIER       | Smart     | SMARTER        |
| Generous   | MORE GENEROUS    | Soon      | SOONER         |
| Good       | BETTER           | Strong    | STRONGER       |
| Happy      | HAPPIER          | Ugly      | UGLIER         |
| High       | HIGHER           | Warm      | WARMER         |
| Little     | LESS             | Wonderful | MORE WONDERFUL |
| Long       | LONGER           | Young     | YOUNGER        |

### Bài 2: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng:

- Living in this small town is (more peaceful/ peaceful more) than I expected.
- Nowadays people are (more anxious/ anxious more) about pollution than before.
- Today you look ( happier/ more happy) than usual.
- This year I will move to a (bigger/ biggest) city.
- This experience is (more exciting/ most exciting) than I expected.
- Who is (more intelligent/ most intelligent) between two of them.
- This song is (catchier/ more catchy) than that song.
- The new sofa is (costlier/ more costly) than the old one
- Our family will move to a (more comfortable/ more comfortable than) place next year.
- I hope you will get (best/ better) the next time I see you.
- James has (many/ more) books than Paul.
- She is (more independent/ most independent) than the last time I saw her.
- Today my sister (is more quiet/ quieter) than usual.
- Jane is (more pretty/ prettier) than Ann.
- The weather is (hotter/ hottest) than yesterday.

### Bài 3 : Hoàn thành các câu sau với dạng so sánh hơn của tính từ trong ngoặc:

- Living in the city is \_\_\_\_\_ MORE CONVENIENT \_\_\_\_\_ than living in the country (convenient).
- Mrs. Smith is \_\_\_\_\_ YOUNGER \_\_\_\_\_ than I thought. (young).
- Houses in big cities are much \_\_\_\_\_ than those in my hometown (tall).
- No one in my class is \_\_\_\_\_ TALLER \_\_\_\_\_ than Jim (smart).
- The senior prom would be \_\_\_\_\_ MORE EXCITING \_\_\_\_\_ than any other proms (exciting).
- I have \_\_\_\_\_ LESS \_\_\_\_\_ courage than my brother (little).
- His health condition is getting \_\_\_\_\_ WORSE \_\_\_\_\_ (bad).
- You are \_\_\_\_\_ CLEVERER \_\_\_\_\_ than you think (clever).
- This computer is much \_\_\_\_\_ MORE EXPENSIVE \_\_\_\_\_ than mine (expensive).
- I always dream of a \_\_\_\_\_ MORE MODERN \_\_\_\_\_ house to live in (modern).
- They are \_\_\_\_\_ MORE SKILLFUL \_\_\_\_\_ than they used to be (skillful).
- Life in this village is \_\_\_\_\_ MORE PEACEFUL \_\_\_\_\_ than anywhere else (peaceful).
- I think people in the countryside are \_\_\_\_\_ FRIENDLIER \_\_\_\_\_ than city dwellers (friendly).
- This year, the prize for the winner is \_\_\_\_\_ MORE VALUABLE \_\_\_\_\_ than last year (valuable).
- Which dress is \_\_\_\_\_ MORE SUITABLE \_\_\_\_\_ for me? (suitable).

16. You should be \_\_\_\_\_ MORE CONFIDENT \_\_\_\_\_ and show your best. (confident).  
 17. They said that the conference was \_\_\_\_\_ MORE INTERESTING \_\_\_\_\_ than usual. (interesting).  
 18. Jane is so pretty but her sister is even \_\_\_\_\_ PRETTIER \_\_\_\_\_ (pretty).  
 19. They work hard to have \_\_\_\_\_ BETTER \_\_\_\_\_ life. (good).  
 20. John is \_\_\_\_\_ MORE INTELLIGENT \_\_\_\_\_ than the rest of the class. (intelligent)

**Bài 4: Biết câu so sánh hơn dùng từ gợi ý:**

0. Bob / strong / Jim. → Bob is stronger than Jim.  
 1. My current job / demanding / my last one.  
 MY CURRENT JOB IS MORE DEMANDING THAN MY LAST ONE  
 2. Today / Jane / beautiful / usual.  
 TODAY JANE IS MORE BEAUTIFUL THAN USUAL  
 3. Yesterday / it / cold / today.  
 YESTERDAY IT WAS COLDER THAN TODAY  
 4. Fruits and vegetables / healthy / fast food.  
 FRUITS AND VEGETABLES ARE HEALTHIER THAN FASTFOOD  
 5. Life in the countryside / peaceful / life in the city.  
 LIFE IN THE COUNTRYSIDE IS MORE PEACEFUL THAN LIFE IN THE CITY.  
 6. Your sister / good / you think.  
 YOUR SISTER IS BETTER THAN YOU THINK  
 7. Who / intelligent / you / in your class?  
 WHO IS MORE INTELLIGENT THAN YOU IN YOUR CLASS?  
 8. Ann / short / you?  
 IS ANN SHORTER THAN YOU?  
 9. Last year / his salary / low / this year.  
 LAST YEAR HIS SALARY WAS LOWER THAN THIS YEAR  
 10. Bob / look / strong / his brother.  
 BOB LOOKS STRONGER THAN HIS BROTHER

**Bài 5: Sắp xếp các từ sau thành câu hoàn chỉnh:**

1. London / think / is / than / more / I / New York / expensive.  
 I THINK LONDON IS MORE EXPENSIVE THAN NEW YORK  
 2. Important / is / Health / than / money / more.  
 HEALTH IS MORE IMPORTANT THAN MONEY  
 3. in / in / city / better / the / is / in / than / country / convenient / than / is.  
 TRAVELLING IN THE CITY IS MORE CONVENIENT THAN IN THE COUNTRYSIDE  
 4. in / health care / city / better / the / is / in / than / countryside / the service / the.  
 THE HEALTH CARE SERVICE IN THE CITY IS BETTER THAN IN THE COUNTRYSIDE  
 5. living / is / than / in / rural / more / areas / living / urban / in / comfortable /  
 LIVING IN RURAL AREAS IS MORE COMFORTABLE THAN LIVING IN URBAN AREAS  
 6. in / pasture / this / that / area / richer / is / area.  
 PASTURE IN THIS AREAS IS RICHER THAN THAT AREA  
 7. Peter / better / Math / than / at / is / Tom.  
 PETER IS BETTER AT MATH THAN JOHN  
 8. crowded / cities / often / than / more / are / the / countryside.  
 CITIES ARE OFTEN MORE CROWDED THAN THE COUNTRYSIDE  
 9. this / cake / is / that / more / one / delicious / than?  
 IS THIS CAKE MORE DELICIOUS THAN THAT ONE?  
 10. Who / more / than / Tom / can / in / intelligent / class / his?  
 WHO CAN BE MORE INTELLIGENT THAN TOME IN HIS CLASS?

**Bài 6: Cho dạng so sánh hơn của các trạng từ trong bảng sau:**

| Trạng từ | So sánh hơn | Trạng từ | So sánh hơn |
|----------|-------------|----------|-------------|
| Badly    | WORSE       | Late     | LATER       |

|              |                   |             |                  |
|--------------|-------------------|-------------|------------------|
| Conveniently | MORE CONVENIENTLY | Smartly     | SMARTLY          |
| Early        | EARLIER           | responsibly | MORE RESPONSIBLY |
| Far          | FARTHER/FURTHER   | Patiently   | MORE PATIENTLY   |
| Fast         | FASTER            | Generously  | MORE GENEROUSLY  |
| Fluently     | MORE FLUENTLY     | Cleverly    | MORE CLEVERLY    |
| Happily      | MORE HAPPILY      | Quickly     | MORE QUICKLY     |
| Hard         | HARDER            | Suitably    | MORE SUITABLY    |
| Slowly       | SLOWER            | Beautifully | MORE BEAUTIFULLY |
| well         | BETTER            | Strongly    | MORE STRONGLY    |

### Bài 7: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng:

- The teacher asked me to speak \_\_\_\_\_.  
A.loud                      **B.louder**                      C.more loud
- Today you looks \_\_\_\_\_ than usual.  
**A.more confident**                      B.more confidently                      C. confidently
- Your house is \_\_\_\_\_ decorated than me.  
A.more beautiful                      **B.more beautifully**                      C.beautifully.
- No one in my class runs \_\_\_\_\_ than Peter.  
A.more fastly                      B.more better                      **C.faster.**
- This time you did much \_\_\_\_\_!  
**A.better**                      B.more better                      C.more well
- You have to work \_\_\_\_\_ If you want to succeed.  
A.more hardly                      B.hardlier                      **C.harder**
- Today I come to class \_\_\_\_\_ than usual  
A.more early                      **B.earlier**                      C. early
- You need to work \_\_\_\_\_, or you will make a lot of mistakes.  
A.more careful                      **B. more carefully**                      C. carefully
- She walks \_\_\_\_\_ than other people.  
**A.slower**                      B.slowlier                      C.more slower
- The blue skirt suits you \_\_\_\_\_ than the black one.  
**A.better**                      B.more better                      C.more well

### Bài 8: Hoàn thành các câu sau với dạng so sánh hơn của các trạng từ trong ngoặc:

- I speak English \_\_\_\_\_ MORE FLUENTLY \_\_\_\_\_ now than last year.(fluently).
- They smiled \_\_\_\_\_ MORE HAPPILY \_\_\_\_\_ than before(happily).
- Tom arrived \_\_\_\_\_ EARLIER \_\_\_\_\_ than I expected(early).
- We will meet \_\_\_\_\_ LATER \_\_\_\_\_ in the afternoon(late).
- Mary dances \_\_\_\_\_ MORE GRACEFULLY \_\_\_\_\_ than anyone else(gracefully)
- Could you speak \_\_\_\_\_ LOUDER \_\_\_\_\_?(loud)
- Jim could do the task \_\_\_\_\_ BETTER \_\_\_\_\_ Jane(well).
- We walked \_\_\_\_\_ MORE SLOWLY \_\_\_\_\_ than other people(slowly).
- Planes can fly \_\_\_\_\_ HIGHER \_\_\_\_\_ than birds(high).
- I can throw the ball \_\_\_\_\_ FARTHER \_\_\_\_\_ than anyone else in my team(far).
- James drives \_\_\_\_\_ MORE CAREFULLY \_\_\_\_\_ than his wife(carefully).
- I visit my grandmother \_\_\_\_\_ MORE OFTEN \_\_\_\_\_ than my brother.(often)
- No one can run \_\_\_\_\_ FASTER \_\_\_\_\_ than John(fast).
- My sister cooks \_\_\_\_\_ WORSE \_\_\_\_\_ than I(badly).
- Everyone in the company is working \_\_\_\_\_ WORSE \_\_\_\_\_ than ever before(hard).

### Bài 9: Hoàn thành các Câu sau với dạng so sánh hơn của các trạng từ trong ngoặc:

- I/ play/ tennis/ badly/ Tom.  
I PLAY TENNIS WORSE THAN TOM
- The Australian athlete/run/ slowly/ the Korean athlete.  
THE AUSTRALIAN ATHLETIC RUNS MORE SLOWLY THAN THE KOREAN

3.Cats/ walk/ quiet/ dogs.

CATS WALK MORE QUIETLY THAN DOGS

4.James/ reply/ swiftly/ Peter.

JAMES REPLIED MORE SWIFTLY THAN PETER

5. The tiger/ hunt/ ferociously/ the wolf.

THE TIGER HUNTS MORE FEROCIOUSLY THAN THE WOLF

6.Your idea/ work/ well/ mine.

YOUR IDEA WORKS BETTER THAN MINE

7.I/ eat/ vegetables/ often/ I used / to.

I EAT VEGETABLES MORE OFTEN THAN I USED TO

8.Today/ you/ perform/ badly/ yesterday.

TODAY YOU PERFORM WORSE THAN YESTERDAY

**Bài 10:Viết lại câu sau cho nghĩa không đổi, sử dụng cấu trúc so sánh hơn “more /less”**

0.Ann speaks French more fluently than James.

→James speaks French less fluently than Ann.

1.Today the sun shines more brightly than yesterday.

YESTERDAY THE SUN SHONE LESS BRIGHTLY THAN TODAY

2.This cake is more freshlt made than that one.

THAT CAKE IS LESS FRESHLY MADE THAN THIS ONE

3.Jim behaves more politely than his younger brother.

JIM’S YOUNGER BROTHER BEHAVES LESS POLITELY THAN JIM

4.Teenagers act more violently these days than in the past.

TEENAGERS ACTED MORE VIOLENTLY IN THE PAST THAN THESE DAYS

5.The doctor treats his patiently than he should.

THE DOCTOR SHOULD TREAT HIS PATIENTS MORE PATIENTLY THAN HE DOES

6.My sister speaks more quickly than I.

I SPEAK LESS QUICKLY THAN MY SISTER.

7.Now Mary drives more carefully than she used to.

MARY USED TO DRIVE LESS CAREFULLY THAN SHE DRIVES NOW

8.This summer I go to the beach more often than the last summer.

THE LAST SUMMER I WENT TO THE BEACH LESS OFTEN THAN THIS SUMMER

**BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO**

**Bài 11:Hoàn thành câu, sử dụng dạng so sánh hơn của các tính từ hoặc trạng từ cho sẵn**

|             |       |      |          |             |
|-------------|-------|------|----------|-------------|
| Angrily     | large | soft | Cleverly | Warm        |
| comfortably | hard  | rich | costly   | beautifully |

1.Her voice is \_\_\_\_\_ SOFTER \_\_\_\_\_ than mine.

2.James can sing \_\_\_\_\_ MORE BEAUTIFULLY \_\_\_\_\_ than many singer.

3.We can live \_\_\_\_\_ MORE COMFORTABLY \_\_\_\_\_ in the countryside than in the city.

4.We hoped we would own a \_\_\_\_\_ LARGER \_\_\_\_\_ apartment.

5.This morden computer is \_\_\_\_\_ COSTLIER \_\_\_\_\_ than that old-fashioned one.

6.My new house is \_\_\_\_\_ MORE CLEVERLY \_\_\_\_\_ designed than my old one.

7.My father reacted \_\_\_\_\_ MORE ANGRILY \_\_\_\_\_ to my misbehaviors than my mother.

8.John studies \_\_\_\_\_ HARDER \_\_\_\_\_ than anyone else in the class.

9.It is getting \_\_\_\_\_ WARMER \_\_\_\_\_ today so we can go out.

10. People in the city are \_\_\_\_\_ RICHER \_\_\_\_\_ than people in the countryside.

**Bài 12: Gạch chân lỗi sai trong mỗi câu sau và sửa lại cho đúng:**

1.Their life has been more **comfortably** since they moved to the city.--> COMFORTABLE

2.She looks **more pretty** in this white dress. →PRETTIER

3.The manager wants us to work **more hardly**. →HARDER

4.This week you looks **more healthily** than last week. →HEALTHIER

5.Everyone in my town is looking for **more better** crop this year. →BETTER

6.Jim runs **more fastly** than his friends. →FASTER

7.I think a settle life is **more better** than a nomadic life. →BETTER

8. Today Jim performs less **confident** than usual. → CONFIDENTLY  
 9. The heavy rain makes it more **difficultly** to drive. → DIFFICULT  
 10. Their team performed much **more well** than our team. → BETER

**Bài 13: Viết lại câu bằng từ đã cho sao cho nghĩa câu không thay đổi theo mẫu:**

0. This exercise is easier than that one.  
 → That exercise is more difficult than that one.  
 1. Mr Smith is wealthier than Mr. Brown.  
 → Mr Brown IS POORER THAN MR. SMITH  
 2. My house is smaller than my parent's house.  
 → My parent's house IS BIGGER THAN MY HOUSE  
 3. The black dress is more expensive than the red one.  
 → The red dress IS CHEAPER THAN THE BLACK ONE  
 4. Today it is colder than yesterday.  
 → Yesterday IT WAS WARMER THAN TODAY  
 5. I don't think you are taller than me.  
 → I don't think I AM SHORTER THAN YOU  
 6. Is Jim worse at Math than John?  
 → Is John BETTER AT MATH THAN JIM?  
 7. Jim looks much younger than his classmates.  
 → Jim's classmates LOOK MUCH OLDER THAN HIM

8. Your hair is longer than mine.  
 My hair IS SHORTER THAN YOURS

**Bài 14: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng:**

Benefit of living in the countryside.

While many people prefer city life, a lot of people want to send their life in a rural area. The countryside are often(1) \_\_\_\_\_ than the city because there are not as many factories and traffic as in big cities. The country folk can be (2) \_\_\_\_\_ and they often live (3) \_\_\_\_\_ than city dwellers. Besides, life in the countryside is (4) \_\_\_\_\_ and peaceful because the crime rate is much (5) \_\_\_\_\_. The rural areas are (6) \_\_\_\_\_ populated than the urban area but the neighbors are (7) \_\_\_\_\_ and more helpful. Life in the countryside is (8) \_\_\_\_\_ for old people than the energetic youngsters.

- |                                   |                             |                        |                    |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. <b><u>A. less polluted</u></b> | B. more polluted            | C. less pollutedly     | D. more pollutedly |
| 2. A. more healthy                | <b><u>B. healthier</u></b>  | C. more healthily      | D. helthily.       |
| 3. A. longly                      | <b><u>B. longer</u></b>     | C. shortly             | D. shorter         |
| 4. A. more simple                 | <b><u>B. simpler</u></b>    | C. simply              | D. more simply     |
| 5. A. higher                      | B. highly                   | <b><u>C. lower</u></b> | D. lowly           |
| 6. <b><u>A. more densely</u></b>  | B. more dense               | C. less                | D. less dense      |
| 7. A. more friendly               | <b><u>B. friendlier</u></b> | C. friendly            | D. less friendly   |
| 8. <b><u>A. more suitable</u></b> | B. more suitbly             | C. less suitably       | D. suitably.       |

**Bài 15: Đọc đoạn văn sau và trả lời câu hỏi: The nomadic life of Mongolian**

1. Is it true that about 50% of Mongolian population still lead a nomadic life?  
 YES IT IS  
 2. What are the most valuable possessions of Mongolian nomads?  
 TENTS AND CATTLE  
 3. Why do Mongolian have to move location throughout the year?  
 BECAUSE MONGOLIAN HAS SEVERE WEATHER AND THERE ARE DRAMATIC CHANGED IN WEATHER CONDITIONS BETWEEN SEASONS  
 4. Where do Mongolian nomads often move to in fall?  
 THEY MOVE UP A HILL  
 5. How often most nomads move their locations?  
 AT LEAST FOUR TIMES A YEAR  
 6. Why more and more Mongolian move to Ulaanbaatar?  
 MORE AND MORE OF ITS CITIZENS MOVE TO ULAANBAATAR BECAUSE THEY WANT TO LOOK FOR AN EDUCATION AND A PROFESSIONAL JOB.

### UNIT 3. PEOPLES IN VIETNAM

#### B. BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN.

##### Bài 1: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng

1. How old \_\_\_\_\_ is your cat? It is two months old.  
A. How old                      B. When                      C. How much
2. \_\_\_\_\_ did you begin working part-time here?                      A. How long                      B. When  
C. How much
3. \_\_\_\_\_ people are there in the conference room?                      A. How  
B. How many                      C. How much
4. \_\_\_\_\_ time will you spend on your new carpet?                      A. How long  
B. How many                      C. How much
5. \_\_\_\_\_ do these shoes cost?                      A. How long  
B. How many                      C. How much
6. \_\_\_\_\_ do you go to the gym?                      A. How  
B. How often                      C. How long
7. \_\_\_\_\_ did you get to work yesterday? I took a taxi because my car was broken.  
A. How                      B. Why                      C. When
8. \_\_\_\_\_ were you late for work yesterday? - Because of the traffic jam.                      A. How  
B. Why                      C. When
9. \_\_\_\_\_ does this laptop belong to? It belongs to Jim.                      A. Who                      B. Whose  
C. Which
10. \_\_\_\_\_ bag was stolen yesterday?                      A. Who  
B. Whose                      C. Which
11. \_\_\_\_\_ will you travel to this summer? I haven't decided yet.                      A. Where  
B. What                      C. Who
12. \_\_\_\_\_ did you sell yesterday? - Bread and cup cakes.                      A. What  
B. Who                      C. Which
13. \_\_\_\_\_ dress did she buy? - The red or the blue one?                      A. What  
B. Whose                      C. Which
14. \_\_\_\_\_ is playing the piano upstairs?                      A. Who  
B. Whose                      C. Whom
15. To \_\_\_\_\_ should I address the letter?                      A. Who  
B. Whose                      C. Whom

**Lưu ý:** Từ để hỏi “whom” không thường được sử dụng nhiều trong văn nói, thay vào đó người ta thường dùng “who” để thay thế. Việc dùng “whom” trong câu hỏi sau một giới từ là văn phong rất quan trọng, như trường hợp câu thứ 15

##### Bài 2: Điền từ thích hợp để hoàn thành các câu sau.

1. **How long** have you give up smoking? - For about two years.
2. **Which** place is more densely populated – Ha noi or Ho Chi Minh City?
3. **Who** broken Jane's favorite vase? Her brother did it.
4. **What** does Mr. Brown do? He's a reseacher.
5. **How many** ethnic groups are there in your country?
6. **How old** is your grandmother? She's ninety years old.
7. **What** does your English teacher look like? She's young and pretty.
8. **How much** water should we drink every day?
9. **How** did you use to go to school? I used to go on foot.
10. **How far** is it from here to the nearest police station?
11. **Whose** songs is this singer performing? He is performing Trinh Cong Son's songs.
12. **Where** was Ms Ann born? She was born in a small village.
13. **What** did you have for breakfast? - Bread and eggs.
14. **Why** didn't you invite Jim to the senior prom?
15. **How often** do they meet each other? Almost every day

Note: Câu 7: Giải thích. Cấu trúc câu hỏi về ngoại hình “What do/does+ S + look like?”

##### Bài 3. Nối câu hỏi ở cột A với câu trả lời ở cột B sao cho thích hợp.



1-e 2-a 3-g 4-b 5-c 6-h 7-d 8-f

1. Bạn đã trả bao nhiêu cho chiếc đài đó? (e) 10 đô - la.
2. Bạn đã làm việc ở đây với tư cách kĩ sư được bao lâu rồi? (a) 6 năm.
3. Bạn đã bắt đầu sự nghiệp ca sĩ từ khi nào? (g) 6 năm trước.
4. Từ đây đến nhà Tom là bao xa? (b) Khoảng 6 ki-lô-mét.
5. Phòng khám thú y được đặt ở đâu? (c) Nó ở gần công viên địa phương.
6. Bạn có thường đi du lịch không? (h) Một hoặc hai lần mỗi năm.
7. Bạn thích cái gì hơn: trà hay cà phê? (d) Tôi thích trà hơn.
8. Hành lý này là của ai? (f) Nó là của tôi.

**Bài 4. Điền một từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống để hoàn thành những câu hỏi dưới đây**

1. Do
2. did
3. did
4. is
5. have
6. will
7. did
8. are
9. are
10. is
11. Have
12. Did
13. does
14. Did
15. is

**Note:** Câu 14. Giải thích: Cấu trúc “used to V”: đã từng làm gì trong quá khứ.

**Bài 5:**

1. How many groups of people are there in your country?
2. How was your party last week?
3. How did you go to school yesterday?
4. Whose car is it?
5. Is Jim learning Geography at the moment?
6. Have you ever seen terraced fields?
7. What kind of animals do the farmers raise in your country?
8. What time does the concert start?
9. How far is it from your house to the local school?
10. Will you come to my birthday party tomorrow?
11. Where did you go last summer?
12. How much money did you spend on clothes last month?
13. How do ethnic people dress in special occasions?
14. Who is swimming in the swimming pool now?
15. How often does Mr. Smith mow the lawn?

Giải thích: Dựa vào thì của động từ trong từng câu để thêm trợ động từ cho phù hợp vào sau từ để hỏi.

**BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN**

**Bài 6. Điền mạo từ ‘a’ hoặc ‘an’ trước những danh từ sau:**

**Giải thích:**

- Mạo từ “a” đứng trước danh từ bắt đầu bằng một phụ âm (consonant) hoặc một nguyên âm (vowel) nhưng được phát âm như phụ âm (ví dụ như university, uniform....)

- Mạo từ “an” đứng trước danh từ bắt đầu bằng một nguyên âm (u, e, o, a, i)

**Bài 7: Điền mạo từ ‘a’, ‘an’ hoặc 0 vào chỗ trống sao cho thích hợp.**

16. She asked me for 0 information about the meeting.

17. They will move to **a** mansion next month.
18. I'd like a grapefruit and 0 orange juice.
19. an award was given to Jim yesterday.
20. We read 0 books and play 0 games when we have free time.
21. Jim doesn't want to borrow 0 money from anyone.
22. My friend and I threw a party last week.
23. It was **an** honor to be invited here today.
24. I've bought an umbrella for my sister.
25. My family often have 0 eggs for breakfast.
26. Would you like a cup of tea?
27. My brother doesn't like 0 cats.
28. Is there a post office here?
29. I spend 0 hours on my DIY project.
30. Mr. Peter used to be a famous vet.

Giải thích:

- Mạo từ "a/an" chỉ đứng trước danh từ đếm được số ít.

#### **BÀI 8: Điền mạo từ "a", "an" hoặc "the" vào chỗ trống sao cho phù hợp.**

1. **a - a - the-the**. Giải thích: "a" đứng trước danh từ không xác định đếm được số ít. "The" đứng trước danh từ đã xác định "cat" và "dog" đã được nhắc đến trước đó.
2. **the** Giải thích: "the" đứng trước một danh từ chỉ vật độc nhất.
3. **a**
4. **the** Giải thích: "the" đứng trước danh từ đã xác định "present" mà người nói và người nghe đều biết đến.
5. **the**
6. **an**
7. **the**
8. **the**
9. **a**
10. **the**
11. **the** Giải thích "the" trong dạng so sánh nhất với tính từ dài "hard-working"
12. **the**
13. **a**
14. **The-the**
15. **a-an-the**
16. **the**
17. **a-a-the**
18. **the-the**
19. **a**
20. **a-a-The**

#### **BÀI 9: Đánh dấu (V) trước câu đúng, đánh dấu (X) trước câu sai và sửa lại cho đúng.**

1. [X] Lỗi sai: **an** sửa: **a** Giải thích: Trước danh từ 'apple' là tính từ "big" bắt đầu bằng một phụ âm nên dùng "a".
2. [x] Lỗi sai: **the** sửa: **an** Giải thích: Dùng "an" trước danh từ đếm được số ít không xác định.
3. [x] Lỗi sai: **a** sửa: **the** đứng trước danh từ đã xác định "full name of ....) mà người nói và người nghe đều biết đến.
4. [x] Lỗi sai: **most beautiful** sửa: **the most beautiful** Giải thích: trong dạng so sánh nhất với tính từ "beautiful"
5. [v] Câu đúng
6. [x] Lỗi sai: **a** sửa: **an** Giải thích: Trước danh từ "costume" là tính từ 'unique' bắt đầu bằng một phụ âm /j/ nên dùng "a"
7. [x] Lỗi sai: **a** sửa: **the** Giải thích: "the" đứng trước danh từ đã xác định 'p' mà người nói và người nghe đều biết đến.
8. [v] Câu đúng

9. [x] Lỗi sai: **a** sửa: **0** Giải thích: “beer” là danh từ không đếm được nên không dùng “a” trước nó.  
 10. [v] Câu đúng

**Bài 10. Đặt câu hỏi cho phần gạch chân trong những câu trả lời sau**

- What has Jim recently experienced in Vietnam?
- Where do the ethnic minorities in Vietnam often live?
- How are their costumes?
- Where do they often gather together in special occasions?
- What does the chief of the community often do at the communal house?
- When do ethnic people often hold festivals?
- Why is life in the mountainous areas quite difficult?
- How long may it take people to travel from their house to the market?
- What makes life in remote areas so difficult?
- How do the local authorities try to help the ethnic minorities?

**BÀI 11: Điền mạo từ “a”, “an”, “the” hoặc 0 vào chỗ trống sao cho phù hợp.**

**0** giải thích: danh từ ‘poultry’ là danh từ dạng số nhiều và không xác định trong trường hợp này.

- the** giải thích: động từ “play” đi với các danh từ chỉ nhạc cụ (piano, guitar, flute...) thì trước các danh từ phải có ‘the’
- a** giải thích: danh từ “festival” là danh từ đếm được số ít và chưa xác định.
- the - the** giải thích: “the” đứng trước danh từ đã xác định mà người nói và người nghe đều biết đến.
- 0** giải thích: Danh từ “cattle” là danh từ số nhiều và không xác định trong trường hợp này.
- a - 0** giải thích: ‘a’ đứng trước danh từ không xác định đếm được số ít – ‘local specialities’ là danh từ số nhiều chưa xác định.
- a** giải thích: “a” đứng trước danh từ không xác định đếm được số ít.
- the** giải thích: “the” đứng trước danh từ đã xác định mà người nói và người nghe đều biết đến.
- 0** giải thích: Danh từ ‘elephants’ là danh từ số nhiều và không xác định trong trường hợp này.
- The – the** giải thích: ‘the’ đứng trước danh từ đã xác định mà người nói và người nghe đều biết đến.

**Bài 12: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết câu hoàn chỉnh.**

- When does the bank open every day?
- Did you have bread and a boiled egg for breakfast?
- Did everyone enjoy the concert last night?
- When did you start working as an officer in this company?
- How much money did you spend on your last holiday?
- What time does the sun often rise in summer?
- Do you like a cup of tea?
- Did the train leave early this morning?
- Who is playing the guitar upstairs?
- Who is the tallest person in your class?

Giải thích: Dựa vào thì của động từ để hoàn thành các câu hỏi với trợ động từ thích hợp.

Lưu ý thêm các mạo từ ‘a/ an/ the’ một cách thích hợp trước danh từ.

**Bài 13: Khoanh vào đáp án đúng.**

1. **C. the**

2. **D. 0**

3. **C: herds** bầy, đàn (vật nuôi)

Giải thích :

đàn (cá)

B. school: đàn (cá)

C. flock: đàn (chim)

A. shoal:

4. **C. the** Giải thích : the locals: chỉ người dân địa phương

5. **C. dancer:** nguy hiểm

toàn

B. guard: canh gác

D. protect: bảo vệ

A. safe: an

6. **C. the** Giải thích: ‘the’ đứng trước danh từ đã xác định mà người nói và người nghe đều biết đến.  
 animals ở đây có ý chỉ những con voi “elephants”

7. **A. How** - Giải thích: Câu hỏi về cách thức

8. **A. extinction:** sự tuyệt chủng  
phá hủy

C. destruction: sự  
D. conservation: sự bảo tồn

**Bài 14: Đọc bài đọc dưới đây và trả lời câu hỏi.**

**1. Its cultural value**

Dẫn chứng:

Dong Son bronze drums are very famous for its cultural value.

**2. Ngọc Lu bronze drum**

Dẫn

chứng: Of about 200 drums discovered, Ngọc Lu bronze drum is considered the most beautiful drum of the Dong Son culture ever found in Vietnam.

**3. at the National Museum of Vietnam History in Hanoi**

Dẫn chứng:

it is now preserved at the National Museum of Vietnam History in Hanoi.

**4. designs of stylized peacock feathers**

Dẫn

chứng: These patterns include a multi-ray star (symbolizing the shining sun) and in between the star rays are designs of stylized peacock feathers.

**5. Short-bill birds, the long-bill birds and deer**

Dẫn

chứng: The bands of animal figures include short-bill birds, the long-bill birds and deer

**6. the brilliant peak of the Dong Son culture**

Dẫn chứng:

The Ngọc Lu bronze drum is the most typical; one in the bronze drum system of Vietnam and at the same time it symbolizes the brilliant peak of the Dong Son culture.

**UNIT 4. OUR CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS  
(PHONG TỤC VÀ TRUYỀN THỐNG CỦA CHÚNG TÔI)**

**BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN**

**Bài 1: Hoàn thành những câu sau với động từ khuyết thiếu “should” hoặc “shouldn’t”.**

- 1. shouldn’t.** Bạn không nên thức quá khuya vì nó không tốt cho sức khỏe.
- 2. should.** Không ai nên đi học muộn ngày mai vì sẽ có một bài kiểm tra.
- 3. shouldn’t** Tôi nghĩ rằng không nên có một đồng rác trước cửa nhà hàng.
- 4. should** Bạn nên đi khám tổng quát thường xuyên.
- 5. Should** Tôi nghĩ bạn nên cẩn trọng hơn
- 6. Should** Nếu bạn có câu hỏi nào, vui lòng viết cho tôi một lá thư. Lưu ý: Câu này là câu trúc đảo ngữ của câu điều kiện loại 1. “Should” thay thế cho “if”
- 7. should** Tôi nên làm gì để học tốt hơn
- 8. shouldn’t** Bố tôi nghĩ rằng tôi không nên quá đam mê trò chơi điện tử
- 9. should** Những ứng viên nên có mặt ở đây trước 10 giờ sáng, không thì họ sẽ bị loại
- 10. should** Bạn nên học về một số nét văn hóa của quốc gia mà bạn chuẩn bị ghé thăm
- 11. shouldn’t** Mary không nên uống thuốc trước khi cô ấy gặp bác sĩ
- 12. Should** James có nên xin việc ở công ty này không? Có, anh ấy nên
- 13. should** Tôi nên làm bao nhiêu thời gian cho nhiệm vụ này?
- 14. shouldn’t** Người già không nên làm việc quá vất vả. Họ cần rất nhiều thời gian để nghỉ ngơi
- 15. shouldn’t** Bố mẹ không nên để con tiếp xúc với điện thoại từ nhỏ

**Bài 2: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết câu hoàn chỉnh với “should” hoặc “shouldn’t”.**

1. You should see the doctor regularly
2. Which dress should I wear today?
3. The teacher thinks that Jim should study harder.
4. The boy shouldn’t climb up the wall.
5. Should I watch TV or go out with friends now?
6. If Jim is sick, he should stay at home.
7. How much water should we drink every day?
8. What shouldn’t I do at Chinese restaurant?
9. You should inform your parents before you go
10. Josh shouldn’t devote all his free time to play games.

**Bài 3: Chuyển những câu sau thành câu đưa ra lời khuyên với “should” hoặc “shouldn’t”.**

1. Parents should instill in their children a respect for their country’s tradition and culture.

- Everyone should go home for a family reunion regularly.
- You should travel more to broaden your horizon.
- What should Jim do to study better?
- We shouldn't go to on our vacation because it's very far from our location.
- They should pay more attention to what your parents say.
- Wherever you go, you should pay close attention to the manner and etiquettes there.

### BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

**Bài 4: Điền động từ khuyết thiếu “must” hoặc “mustn’t” vào chỗ trống để hoàn thành các câu sau.**

- must** Tôi phải làm công việc giặt giũ hai ngày một lần.
- mustn't** Bạn không được ở bên ngoài quá muộn.
- mustn't** Bạn không được phá vỡ luật lệ của lớp.
- must** Mẹ tôi không muốn tôi về nhà quá muộn, vậy nên tôi phải rời đi bây giờ.
- must** Những cậu bé đó phải hoàn thành bài tập về nhà trước khi ra ngoài.
- must** Jim phải hoàn thành bài luận văn hôm nay bởi vì anh ấy sẽ rất bận ngày mai.
- mustn't** Hành khách không được sử dụng điện thoại trên máy bay.
- mustn't** Bạn không được đi học muộn ngày mai.
- must** Trẻ em phải được đi kèm bởi người lớn khi đi thăm những nơi nguy hiểm.
- must** Tôi phải về nhà trước bữa tối.
- mustn't** Học sinh không được nói chuyện trong giờ kiểm tra.
- mustn't** Bạn không được gian lận trong bài kiểm tra.
- must** Phải có ai đó ở trên tầng. Tôi có thể nghe thấy tiếng ồn.
- mustn't** Chúng ta không được từ bỏ thứ chúng ta đang làm.
- mustn't** Bạn không được để kẻ lạ mặt vào nhà khi tôi không có ở nhà.

**Bài 5: Hoàn thành các câu sau bằng động từ khuyết thiếu “must” hoặc “have to” và động từ trong ngoặc.**

- I **have to** learn Japanese. I need it my job.
- I **must** learn Japanese. I love it.
- I **must** wake up early tomorrow. I want to watch the sunrise.
- I **have to** wake up early tomorrow. I have a meeting early in the morning
- I **must** wear a black dress because I want to look good.
- I **have to** wear a black dress because that is the requirement of my company.
- I **have to** go home now because it's too late.
- I **must** go home now because I have a lot to do.
- I **must** go to see my friend because I miss her.
- I **have to** go to see my classmate because we work on the same project.
- You **have to** wear a tie in the company. It's one of their rules.
- I **have to** go abroad next week. My boss wants me to sign a contract with our foreign customers.
- I **must** work harder. I want to be successful.
- This room is mess, I **must** find time to clean it!
- You really **have to** stop driving so fast or you'll have an accident!

### Giải thích:

-“must”: dùng với nghĩa bắt buộc mang tính chủ quan, từ phía người nói

-“have to”: cũng mang nghĩa bắt buộc nhưng mang tính khách quan, do luật lệ hay các yếu tố bên ngoài quyết định

**Bài 6: Điền động từ khuyết thiếu “mustn’t” hoặc “don’t have to” vào chỗ trống để hoàn thành các câu sau.**

- don't have to** Bạn không phải đón tôi vào ngày mai. Tôi sẽ bắt taxi
- mustn't** Nhìn tấm biển! Bạn không được bước trên cỏ
- mustn't** Bạn không được đổ lỗi cho ai đó về lỗi lầm của mình. Bạn phải có trách nhiệm với bản thân

4. **mustn't**                      Bạn không được vắng mặt ở lớp vào ngày mai vì cô giáo sẽ kiểm tra sự có mặt của bạn
5. **don't have to**            Tôi không phải chuẩn bị bữa tối vì chúng tôi sẽ đi ăn bên ngoài tối nay.
6. **mustn't**                    Bạn không được để rác ở đây. Nó bị cấm
7. **mustn't**                    Bạn không được để ai biết về nó. Đó là một bí mật lớn
8. **don't have to**            Bạn không phải đến sớm ngày mai vì sự kiện sẽ bắt đầu muộn
9. **mustn't**                    Bạn không được đỗ xe ở đây. Có một cái biển "Không đỗ xe"
10. **mustn't**                  Chúng ta không còn nhiều tiền. Chúng ta không được lãng phí chút nào nữa.
11. **mustn't**                  Họ không được quên bài tập về nhà ở nhà.
12. **don't have to**            Tôi không phải làm việc nhà vì tôi có một người giúp việc để làm nó cho tôi.
13. **mustn't**                  Họ không được phá vỡ luật lệ với cách đó. Như vậy không chấp nhận được.
14. **mustn't**                  Tôi không được sử dụng máy tính sau 11 giờ đêm vì mẹ tôi không cho phép.
15. **don't have to**            Bạn không phải mua cuốn sách đó. Tôi sẽ cho bạn mượn.

**Giải thích:**

mustn't: dùng với nghĩa cấm đoán, không được làm gì.

"don't have to": dùng với nghĩa không bắt buộc làm gì

**Bài 7. Đánh dấu (V) trước câu đúng, đánh dấu (x) trước câu sai và sửa lại cho đúng**

1. (v)      câu đúng
2. **Lỗi sai: "mustn't" sửa "don't have to",** giải thích: dùng với nghĩa không bắt buộc làm gì: "Tôi có thể giúp bạn một tay. Bạn không cần phải làm việc một mình"
3. **Lỗi sai: "mustn't" sửa "don't have to",** giải thích: "Họ không cần phải vội vã vì bộ phim bắt đầu muộn"
4. **Lỗi sai: "must" sửa "have to",** giải thích: "have to" cũng mang nghĩa bắt buộc nhưng mang tính khách quan, do luật lệ hay các yêu tố khách quan quy định.
5. **Lỗi sai: "mustn't" sửa "don't have to",** giải thích: "Mai là thứ Hai nhưng tôi không phải đi học"
6. **Lỗi sai: "must" sửa "have to"**
7. (v)      câu đúng
8. **Lỗi sai: "have to" sửa "has to",** giải thích: Chủ ngữ trong câu là đại từ bất định "everyone" nên động từ chia số ít, "have to" phải chia thành "has to".
9. **Lỗi sai: "mustn't" sửa "don't have to",** giải thích: "Trời hôm nay ấm nên chúng tôi không cần phải mặc áo khoác dày.
10. (v)      câu đúng

**BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO.**

**Bài 8: Hoàn thành các câu sau bằng động từ khuyết thiếu "should" hoặc "shouldn't" và những động từ cho sẵn.**

1. **should thank.** Bạn nên cảm ơn chủ nhà vì đã chăm sóc bạn lúc bạn ở đó.
2. **shouldn't talk.** Bạn không nên nói chuyện khi miệng còn đồ ăn.
3. **should be.** Giáo viên của chúng tôi luôn nhắc nhở rằng chúng tôi nên đúng giờ
4. **should try.** Bạn nên thử những đặc sản địa phương khi bạn thăm quan một nơi nào đó.
5. **should discuss.** Đây là một câu hỏi khó. Tôi nghĩ chúng ta nên thảo luận và tìm ra cách giải quyết cùng nhau.
6. **Should- break.** Năm nay chúng ta có nên phá vỡ truyền thống và đi du lịch trong dịp Tết không?
7. **shouldn't wear.** Khách du lịch không nên mặc quần áo ngắn khi tham quan những nơi như đền hay lăng.
8. **shouldn't be.** Tôi chuẩn bị đi du lịch bằng máy bay tuần sau. Mẹ tôi bảo rằng hành lý của tôi không nên quá nặng.

**Bài 9: Dựa vào thông tin cho sẵn trong bảng, viết câu với động từ khuyết thiếu "should" hoặc "shouldn't" để diễn tả những điều nên/ không nên làm gì khi sống ở Nhật Bản.**

### When you are in Japan

1. You should be on time
2. You shouldn't pass food from one pair of chopsticks to the other.
3. You should bring your business card.
4. You shouldn't bring outside food into restaurants.
5. You should say "Itadakimasu" before eating ,especially if you're being treated.
6. You shouldn't use the phone in trains and elevators.
7. You should make loud gulping noises when drinking
8. You shouldn't drink or eat while walking
9. You should cover your mouth with your other hand when using toothpick.
10. You shouldn't use your chopsticks to point at somebody.

### Bài 10: Hoàn thành các câu dưới đây với thể khẳng định hoặc phủ định của "must, have to, has to"

1. **mustn't.** Học sinh không được nhìn vào những ghi chép của họ khi học đang làm bài kiểm tra.
2. **has to** Mẹ tôi bị đau đầu nặng , vậy nên bà phải ngừng làm việc hôm nay.
3. **have to** Có một vụ tai nạn nên giao thông bị chặn lại. Chúng tôi phải ở đây một lúc.
4. **don't have to** Bạn không cần phải làm điều đó. Tôi sẽ làm sau.
5. **has to** Anh ấy phải đợi trong hàng như những người khác.
6. **mustn't** Bạn không được châm lửa gần một trạm xăng.
7. **mustn't** Khi đang chạy một phương tiện giao thông, bạn không được uống rượu rồi lái xe.
8. **mustn't** Bạn không được bỏ học quá nhiều, nếu không thì bạn sẽ không qua kỳ thi cuối.
9. **must** Họ phải làm việc chăm chỉ và kiếm nhiều tiền. Họ muốn chuyển tới một căn hộ lớn hơn.
10. **doesn't have to** Ông Smith không cần phải lái xe đi làm vì công ty của ông ấy gần nhà.

### Giải thích

- "**must**" dùng với nghĩa bắt buộc mang tính chủ quan, từ phía người nói
- "**have to**" cũng mang nghĩa bắt buộc nhưng mang tính khách quan, do luật lệ hay các yếu tố bên ngoài quy định.
- "**mustn't**" dùng với nghĩa cấm đoán, không được làm gì.
- "**don't have to**" dùng với nghĩa không bắt buộc làm gì.

### Bài 11: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng

1. **B. honored:** tôn kính
2. **D. However.** Giải thích: Dùng liên từ 'however' để nối 2 câu có ý nghĩa đối lập.
3. **B. mats:** cái chiếu, **A. curtain:** rèm, **C. sofa:** ghế sofa , **D. carpet:** thảm
4. **A. respect (n)** sự tôn trọng
5. **A. tradition:** truyền thống, **B. văn hóa,** **C. phong tục,** **D phong cách sống**
6. **A. longevity:** sự trường tồn, trường thọ

### Bài 12. Đọc đoạn văn dưới đây và điền T(True) trước câu có nội dung đúng với nội dung bài đọc, điền F(False) trước câu có nội dung sai với nội dung bài đọc.

1. **T.** Dẫn chứng: traditional Vietnamese customs and habits have been formed time to time for thousands of years. This creates a long –lasting culture.
2. **F.** Dẫn chứng: However, with a firm native culture, Vietnamese people keep their culture away from being assimilation....
3. **T.** Dẫn chứng: In the entire history of Vietnam, Vietnamese culture is the combination of native culture, cultural exchange with China, Asia region and western countries.
4. **T.** Dẫn chứng: ..... Vietnamese people keep their culture away from being assimilation, and "Vietnamizing" those cultureal features instead.
5. **T.** Dẫn chứng: These customs and habits are associated with community of villages.
6. **T.** Dẫn chứng: Vienam is a country of festivals, especially in spring.



7. F. Dẫn chứng: Yet, customs and habits of Vietnamese people vary from region to region, and ethnic group to ethnic group.

## UNIT 5

**Bài 1: Điền S (Simple) trước những câu đơn, điền C (compound) trước những câu ghép và CC (Complex) trước những câu phức.**

- \_\_\_C\_\_\_ 1. My bike is broken, so I have to walk to school.  
\_\_\_S\_\_\_ 2. My mother bought me a new pair of shoes and made me a cake on my birthday.  
\_\_\_S\_\_\_ 3. I didn't expect Jim to come to the meeting yesterday.  
\_\_\_C\_\_\_ 4. Peter had an accident last week but now he is fine.  
\_\_\_CC\_\_\_ 5. When I came home, my sister was watching TV.  
\_\_\_CC\_\_\_ 6. If you want to succeed in life, you have to work harder.  
\_\_\_C\_\_\_ 7. My sister fancies rock music and she always wants to go to a rock concert.  
CC 8. My grandfather and my grandmother first met each other when they were very young.  
\_\_\_CC\_\_\_ 9. I didn't know his address until Mary told me.  
\_\_\_CC\_\_\_ 10. Although she tried her best, she didn't get the job.  
\_\_\_S\_\_\_ 11. In spring, there are various festival throughout country.  
\_\_\_CC\_\_\_ 12. Jame never eats junk food because it's bad for his healthy.  
\_\_\_S\_\_\_ 13. There are several parks around the city.  
\_\_\_CC\_\_\_ 14. You may have a sore throat if you drink cold water.  
\_\_\_S\_\_\_ 15. They are going to hold a party to celebrate their wedding anniversary.

**Bài 2: Khonh tròn vào liên từ thích hợp để hoàn thành những câu ghép dưới đây.(and,or,but,so)**

1. My father is an engineer,\_\_\_\_\_ he often has to work away from home.  
A.and B. or C.but D.so
- 2.This year the Mid-Autumn Festival falls on the next Sunday,\_\_\_\_\_ I can go home and reunite with my family.  
A.and B. or C.but D.so
- 3.I have never joined in a carnival,\_\_\_\_\_ I am very curious about it.  
A.and B. or C.but D.so
- 4.My mother is occupied in her job,\_\_\_\_\_ she tries to make time for me.  
A.and B. or C.but D.so
- 5.Do you want to join us \_\_\_\_\_ do you want to leave now?  
A.and B. or C.but D.so
- 6.I loves cats,\_\_\_\_\_ my mother doesn't allow me to have one.  
A.and B.or C.but D.so
- 7.Mary wants to go abroad,\_\_\_\_\_ she saves money from now.  
A.and B.or C.but D.so
- 8.They used to be friends,\_\_\_\_\_ now they are not.  
A.and B.or C.but D.so
- 9.This event is help to commemorate the national heroes,\_\_\_\_\_ it teacher children to respect and be grateful to the heroes.  
A.and B.or C.but D.so
- 10.You can take a seat,\_\_\_\_\_ you can go around and take a look.It's up to you.  
A.and B.or C.but D.so

**Bài 3: Điền một liên từ thích hợp để hoàn thành những câu ghép sau.**

1. My father wants me to become a doctor, BUT I want to become a designer.  
2. It is a challenging task, SO it takes me a lot of time to do it.  
3. Should I stay in and watch TV OR should I hang out with friends today?  
4. There are many festival in Vietnam AND many of them are held in the spring.  
5. Did you stay at home last night OR did you go out with your friends?  
6. I broke my glasses yesterday, SO I didn't see things clearly.  
7. My brother doesn't socialize much, SO he has very few friends.  
8. A new camera is all I want now, BUT I don't have enough money.  
9. Mary looks small and thin, BUT she owns great strength.

10. I have many things to do tonight, SO I reject my friend's invitation to her party.
11. My computer is brand new, BUT I encounter some problems when I use it.
12. This is a complex problem, SO we need to work together to find the solution.
13. Peter doesn't feel today, SO he is absent from school.
14. They thought they won the match, BUT it turned out that they were losers.
15. My siblings and I don't share many similarities, BUT we are in harmony with each other.

**Bài 4: Nối hai câu đơn sau thành câu ghép.**

1. My best friend is studying abroad, so it is impossible for us to meet each other now.
2. They are going to build a new bridge across this river, so traveling will be much more convenient.
3. It has been ages since our last encounter but I still remember him clearly.
4. I went down with flu last week so I had to postpone my work.
5. I think the festival will be full of fun and many people will enjoy it.
6. Students can choose to carry out a project on environmental issues or they can conduct research on the topic of renewable energy.
7. My mother started a business trip last week but she hasn't returned home yet.
8. My brother has grown up into an adult but he still enjoys playing with Lego.

**Bài 5: Khoanh tròn vào liên từ thích hợp để hoàn thành những câu phức dưới đây.**

1. It will be a great fortune (if/unless) I can join upcoming carnival.
2. I will lend you my book (as long as/as soon as) you promise to keep it clean.
3. I will call you (as long as/as soon as) I arrive there.
4. (When/While) I came, Jim was having dinner.
5. Catherine was shocked (when/until) she found out the truth.
6. They have worked at this company (when/since) they graduated.
7. At 8 pm last night, I was doing my homework (when/while) my sister was playing with her toys.
8. (Before/After) I had eaten my breakfast, I went to school by bus.
9. (Although/Despite) Mary looks thinner than me, she is much stronger than me.
10. They didn't come to the party (since/as soon as) they were too busy.
11. You should bring your raincoat (unless/in case) it rains.
12. I didn't realize her new hair (when/until) she told me.
13. I won't accept this job (even if/if) they offer me high salary.
14. My father will buy me a book (even though/as long as) I pass the exam.
15. I like her (when/even though) she's annoying sometimes.

**Bài 6: Nối những mệnh đề ở cột A với cột B để tạo thành một câu ghép hoàn chỉnh.**

- |             |             |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1- <u>d</u> | 2- <u>e</u> | 3- <u>a</u> | 4- <u>c</u> |
| 5- <u>h</u> | 6- <u>g</u> | 7- <u>b</u> | 8- <u>f</u> |

**Bài 7: Điền những liên từ cho sẵn vào chỗ trống để hoàn thành những câu phức dưới đây.**

1. EVEN THOUGH Jame is my friend, I can't accept his arrogance.
2. My brother is a bookworm, WHEREAS I don't like reading books.
3. At midnight, my parents were sleeping WHILE I was cramming for exams.
4. IF you have any questions, you ask me after the lesson.
5. We won't go camping UNLESS the weather is fine.
6. You shouldn't skip classes UNLESS you really have to.
7. What did you do BEFORE you went to bed last night?
8. In some cultures, you have to pray BEFORE you eat.
9. We are very familiar with this area SINCE we moved here 15 years ago.
10. IF you travel from the North to the South of Vietnam, you will experience many interesting customs.

**Bài 8: Viết lại hai câu đơn thành một câu phức.**

1. Dog is my favorite animal BECAUSE they are good companions of people.
2. I don't like jazz, WHEREAS a friend of mine is a fan of it.
3. ALTHOUGH they were stuck in the traffic for hours, they managed to get there on time.
4. WHEN I came to the party, everyone was leaving.
5. This time Jane works very hard BECAUSE she doesn't want to fail the exam again.
6. I seldom do exercises ALTHOUGH doing exercises is good for health.

7. ALTHOUGH my computer is old-fashioned, it functions very smoothly.  
 8. I didn't know her real name BECAUSE people always called her by her nickname.

### ■ BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

**Bài 9: Đánh dấu [V] trước câu đúng. Đánh dấu [X] trước câu trả lời sai và sửa lại cho đúng.**

  X   1. I love the Mid-Autumn festival. Since there are a variety of interesting activities during the festival.

Sửa festival since: mệnh đề phụ thuộc đứng sau since không thể tách riêng thành 1 câu.

  X   2. While the Mid-Autumn festival is also called "Children's festival" in Vietnam, it is enjoyed by people of all ages.

Sửa although: liên từ while không phù hợp trong trường hợp này.

  V   3. On this special occasion, family members often reunite and celebrate the festival.

  X   4. Many people choose to go out and enjoy the exciting atmosphere, however others want to stay in and have time with their family.

Sai: However

Sửa: whereas

  X   5. The festival is held on the 15<sup>th</sup> day of the 8<sup>th</sup> month of the lunar calendar when the full moon.

Sai: the full moon

Sửa: the moon is full

  X   6. Moon cakes are very important as if making and sharing moon cakes is the hallmark tradition of this festival.

Sai: as if vì as if không phù hợp để diễn tả quan hệ nguyên nhân kết quả

Sửa: because

  X   7. In Chinese culture, a round shape symbolizes completeness and reunion so the eating of round moon cakes among family members signifies the unity of families.

Sai: so

Sửa: , so phải có dấu , trước so

  X   8. Unless you visit Vietnam in autumn, you should join in this special festival.

Sai: unless

Sửa: if

**Bài 10: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết câu ghép hoàn chỉnh với các liên từ and, so, but.**

1. I/visit/my neighbors/yesterday/no one/be/home.

**I visited my neighbors yesterday but no one was at home**

2. They/recently/buy/new/house/they/throw/party/tomorrow.

**They have recently bought a new house, so they will throw a party tomorrow.**

3. You/face/a lot of/difficulties/in the future/career/you/should/never/give/up.

**You will face a lot of difficulties in the future career but you should never give up.**

4. You/like/cup/of/coffee/you/like/glass/of/water?

**Do you like a cup of coffee or do you like a glass of water?**

5. Mr. Smith/seem/nice/man/he/be/selfish.

**Mr Smith seems nice but he is selfish.**

6. Mr. Brown /be/dedicated/teacher/many people/respect/him.

**Mr Brown is a dedicated teacher, so many people respect him.**

7. My students/be/hard-working/and/well-behaved/I not/have to/worry/much/about/them.

**My students are hard-working and well-behaved, so I don't have to worry much about them.**

8. Ann/want/lose/weight/she/go/the gym/regularly.

**Ann wants to lose weight, so she goes to the gym regularly.**

9. The new radio/cost/me/a lot of/money/its/quality/br/poor.

**The new radio costs me a lot of money but its quality is poor.**

10. This movie/be/praised/by/critics/I/not/really/like/it.

**This movie is praised by critics but I don't really like it.**

**Bài 11: Điền liên từ thích hợp vào ô trống để hoàn thành những câu sau:**

1. They haven't eaten anything since the morning BECAUSE/SINCE/AS they were too busy to eat.

2. James is very excited now BECAUSE/SINCE/AS he is going abroad next month.

3. ALTHOUGH/THOUGH/ EVEN THOUGH it may be very challenging for you to do it, you can give it a try.
4. I was going home yesterday WHEN I came across my old friend.
5. UNLESS you often an apology to Jane, she won't forgive you.
6. BECAUSE/ SINCE/AS Mr. Smith doesn't like traditional folk songs, he rarely listen to them.
7. Will you hang out with your friends OR will you reunite with your family on the Mid-Autumn festival?
8. IF you want to visit a foreign country, you have to apply for a visa first.
9. Tony has lived in Vietnam for 2years, BUT he doesn't know much about the countries festival.
10. Normally our family prefers staying at home and having dinner together on weekends, BUT this week we want to do something else.

**Bài 12: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng.**

- |                       |                       |                |               |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. honor           | <b>B. show</b>        | C. comemorate  | D. celebrate  |
| 2. A. When            | <b>B. because</b>     | C. if          | D. in case    |
| 3. <b>A. cultural</b> | B. customary          | C. traditional | D. historical |
| 4. A. helps           | <b>B. contributes</b> | C. makes       | D. continues  |
| 5. A. or              | <b>B. and</b>         | C. but         | D. so         |
| 6. <b>A. while</b>    | B. when               | C. although    | D. but        |

**Bài 13: Đọc đoạn văn sau và trả lời câu hỏi.**

1. Where is Huong Pagoda located?

IN MY DUC DISTRICT

2. How long does Huong Pagoda festival last?

THREE MONTHS

3. What happens during the Zen ceremony?

MONKS AND BUDDHISTS OFFER INCENCE, FLOWERS, CANDLES AND FRIUTS; TWO MONKS PERFORM BEAUTIFUL AND FLEXIBLE DANCES.

4. What are some entertaining activities in Huong Pagoda Festival?

BOAT CRUISE, MOUNTAIN CLIMBING AND CAVE EXPLORING.

5. What is believed to bring you fulfillment and great success in life?

CLIMBINGUP THE TOP OF HUONG TICH MUONTAIN

6. When will tourists have chance to taste the fresh flavor of apricot juice?

AT THE END OF FESTIVAL

**UNIT 6**

**BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN :**

**Bài 1: Chia động từ trong ngoặc ở thì quá khứ đơn để hoàn thành câu chuyện ngụ ngôn:**

**THE FOX AND THE GRAPES**

Long, long year ago there (1. Live) LIVED a fox who loved to eat. He lived close to a vineyard and he used to stare at the lovely grapes that hung there.

“ How juice they look. Oh I am sure these are stuff that metl in the mouth when you have them. If only I could reach them.” On sunny day, the fox (2. Wake) WOKE up and (3.see) SAW the grapes glistening by the sunlight. The vineyard (4.look) LOOKED heavenly and the grapes looked so luscious that the famished fox could no longer control itself. He (5.jump) JUMPLED to reach them but fell down.

He jumped again. No, they (6.be) WERE much higher.

He jumped even more. But they were still out of reach.

He jumped and (7.stretch) STRETCHED and (8.hop) HOPPED but no avail. Those yummy grapes (9.hang) HUNG/HANGGED higher than the fox could reach. No matter hard he (10.try) TRIED, the fox could not reach the grapes. He (11.pant) PAINTED and (12.begin) BEGAN to sweat out of exhaustion. Giving up finally, he looked up in contempt and (13.say) SAID as he (14.walk) WALED away, “those grapes surely must be sour. I wouldn't eat them even if they were served to me on a golden dish.”

It's easy to despise what you cannot have.

**Bài 2: sắp xếp từ cho trước thành câu hoàn chỉnh:**



1. year/ did/ you/ Where/ travel/ last/ to ?

**Where did you travel to last year?**

2. me/ difficult/ for/ it/ learn/ to/ was/ English.

**It was difficult for me to learn English.**

3. small/ When/ I/ / mother/ me/ was/ reads/ often/ to/ my.

**When I was small, my mother often reads to me.**

4. well-behaved/ be/ He/ to/ used/ a/ child.

**He used to be a well-behaved child.**

5. local/ at/ school/ the/ they/ Were/ students/ secondary?

**Were they students at the local secondary school?**

6. age/ Daisy/ to/ the/ an/ piano/ early/ at/ learnt.

**Daisy learnt to play the piano at an early age.**

7. cars/ streets/ 10/ ago/ There/ not/ year/ were/ so/ many/ in.

**There were not many cars in the street 10 years ago.**

8. friends/ / Last/ my/ and/ to/ cinema/ the/ went/ week.

**Last week, my friends and I went to the cinema.**

9. didn't /me/ use/ allow/ knife/ My/ to/ father.

**My father didn't allow me to use knife.**

10. Did/ leave/ you/ party/ the/ early/ night/ last?

**Did you leave the party early last night?**

### **3.Đánh dấu [V] trước câu đúng, đánh dấu [X] trước câu sai và viết lại câu đúng.**

1. Was you give me a ring yesterday? X -> DID YOU GIVE ME A RING YESTERDAY?

2. Who did the first person to come to the class? X -> WHO WAS THE FIRST PERSON COME TO THE CLASS?

3. Jim hurted himself when he prepared the dinner. X -> HURT

4. Last week, there was a folk music concert at the lock park. V

5. When I was small, I am the naughtiest child in my village. X -> WHEN I WAS SMALL, I WAS THE NAUGHTIEST CHILD IN MY VILLAGE.

6. Did he used to be a renowned author? X -> USE

7. I didn't know who broke the vase. V

8. Did you were born in Japan? X -> WERE YOU BORN IN JAPAN?

9. The first time I met him were 2 years ago. X -> THE FIRST TIME I MET HIM WAS 2 YEARS AGO.

10. They didn't came to class yesterday. V

### **4. Chia động từ trong ngoặc ở thì quá khứ tiếp diễn để hoàn thành câu sau.**

1. When I called my mother, she (drive) WAS DRIVING .

2. Yesterday at six I (prepare) WAS PREPARING dinner.

3. The Smiths (eat) WERE EATING dinner in the restaurant when I saw them.

4. Nina (look) WAS LOOKING for a job at this time last year

5. My friends (wait) WERE WAITING for the bus I saw them.

6. WAS TIM WRITING (Tim /write) a letter when you came in his room?

7. What WERE MARY AND PETER MAKING (Mary and peter)?

8. The children (play) WERE PLAYING in the playground when it suddenly began to rain.

9. What WERE YOU DOING (you/do) at this time yesterday?

10. I (play) WAS PLAYING video game when my father came home.

11. We (sleep) WERE SLEEPING all day.

12. While Aaron (work) WAS WORKING in his room, his friends (play) PLAYED in the garden.

13. I tried to tell them the truth but they (not listen) WERE NOT LISTENING .

14. Where WERE THEY GOING (they/go) at 5pm yesterday?

15. Most of the time we (sit) **WERE SITTING** in the room and (talk) **WERE TALKING** with others.

**5. Dựa vào các từ cho sẵn, viết thành câu hoàn chỉnh.**

1. They/ work/ their/ project/ at 2pm/ yesterday.

**They were working their project at 2 pm yesterday.**

2. We/ study/ English/ at this time/ last week.

**We were studying English at this time last week.**

3. Which/ dress/ she/ wear/ at the party/ last night?

**Which dress was she wearing at the party last night?**

4. No one/ sleep/ at/ this time/ yesterday.

**No one was sleeping at this time yesterday.**

5. Some girls/ argue/ outside/ the shop/ yesterday.

**Some girls were arguing outside at the shop yesterday.**

6. Jim/ read/ book/ or/ he/ watch/ TV/ at 4pm yesterday?

**Was Jim reading book or he was watching TV at 4 pm yesterday?**

7. My parents / look/ forward/ to/ a vacation/ at this time/ last year.

**My parents were looking forward to a vacation at this time last year.**

8. My brother/ and/ I/ build/ tree house/ this time/ last year.

**My brother and I were building a tree house at this time last year.**

**6. Hoàn thành câu, sử dụng quá khứ tiếp diễn của các động từ cho sẵn.**

|              |              |              |             |               |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| <i>Enjoy</i> | <i>Paint</i> | <i>rest</i>  | <i>Read</i> | <i>study</i>  |
| <i>Play</i>  | <i>Walk</i>  | <i>speak</i> | <i>Take</i> | <i>vacuum</i> |

1. We saw a lot of rubbish when we **were walking** along that street.

2. I **was enjoying** the meal when I spotted a fly in my shop.

3. Jim **was taking** a shower when his brother came home.

4. They **were playing** badminton from 4pm till 6pm yesterday.

5. Mrs. Brown **was resting** the stairs when her husband came home.

6. My neighbors **were painting** the windows when I visited them.

7. **Was he studying** all day yesterday? I didn't see him anything.

8. My father **was reading** a newspaper when I entered

9. Jane **was speaking** to her classmates but they didn't listen.

10. The student **was vacuuming** very hard when the teacher entered.

**7. Viết câu hỏi cho phần gạch chân trong các câu dưới đây.**

1. Mary was making a birthday cake for her grandmother.

**What was Mary making for her grandmother?**

2. He found a silver coin when he was digging his garden.

**When did he find a silver coin?**

3. When you telephoned, I was looking after my sister.

**What were you doing when I telephoned?**

4. They were talking with Josh's wife.

**Whom they were talking with?**

5. The kids were listening to the radio when I saw them.

**What were the kids doing when you saw them?**

6. Peter was mowing the lawn while his wife was watering the trees.

**What was Peter doing while his wife was watering the trees?**

7. Jane was singing a folk song at this time yesterday.

**Who was singing a folk song at this time yesterday?**

8. Josh was walking slowly when he was hit by a motorbike.

What was Josh doing when he was hit by a motorbike?

▪ **BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO.**

**8. Gạch chân lỗi sai và sửa lại cho đúng.**

An ant and the grasshopper

In a field one summer's day a Grasshopper was hopping about, chirping and sang to its heart's. An Ant was passing by and he bearing along with toil an ear of corn he was taking to the nest. "Why not come and chat with me," saying the Grasshopper, "instead of toiling and moiling in that way?"

"I am helping to lay up food for the winner," said the Ant, "and the recommend you to do the same."

"Why bother about winner?" said the Grasshopper; "We have got plenty of food at present." But the Ant went on its way and was continuing its toil.

When the winner was coming the Grasshopper was having no found itself dying of hunger- while it was seeing the ants distributing every day corn and grain from the stores they had collected in the summer. Then the Grasshopper was knowing : It is best to prepare for days of need.

| Lỗi sai     | Sửa       | Lỗi sai | Sửa  |
|-------------|-----------|---------|------|
| Sang        | Singing   | come    | came |
| Was passing | Passed    | have    | had  |
| Corn        | The corn  | seeing  | saw  |
| Saying      | Said      | knowing | Knew |
| continuing  | Continued |         |      |

**9. Chia động từ trong ngoặc ở thì quá khứ đơn hoặc thì quá khứ tiếp diễn sao**

- I got to the supermarket just before it closed and (buy) **BOUGHT** milk.
- We invited Sarah to the party, but she (not come) **DIDN'T COME**
- Jack lost his job because he (be) **WAS** too irresponsible for his work.
- Ted (listen) **WERE LISTENING** to music at half past seven yesterday night.
- Everyone (know) **KNEW** that it was Bill's fault, but nobody said anything.
- Karen (take) **TOOK** the key from the coffee table and stormed out of the door.
- At midnight, I (sleep) **WAS SLEEPNG**, but Jane (do) **WAS DOING** her assignment.
- Luke (stand) **WAS STANDING** outside the bank when suddenly two robbers (run) **RAN** him.
- I was bored, so Mum (take) **TOOK** me to a drama workshop with her.
- Do you remember the time we (go) **WENT** to England on holiday?
- When we (be) **WERE** in Canada, we (go) **WERE GOING** skiing almost every day.
- About four years ago, I (decide) **DECIDED** to become a chef.

**BÀI 10: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết thành câu hoàn chỉnh.**

- We/ have/ breakfast/ when/ the mailman/ arrive.

**WE WERE HAVING BREAKFAST WHEN THE MAILMAN ARRIVED.**

- While/ everyone/ sleep/ Paul/ watch/TV.

**WHILE EVERYONE WAS SLEEPNG, PAUL WATCHED TV.**

- I/ dream/ about/ long/ vacation/ when/ the alarm clock/ go/ off.

past



**I WAS DREAMING ABOUT A LONG VACATION WHEN THE ALARM CLOCK WENT OFF.**

4. While/ I/ practice/ the piano/ late/ last night, I/ hear/ strange/ noise.

**WHILE I WAS PRACTICING THE PIANO LAST NIGHT, I HEARD STRANGE NOISE.**

5. The sheep/ graze/ in/ the/ field/ when/ they/ be/ scared/ by/ the/ noise.

**THE SHEEP WERE GRAZING IN THE FIELD WHEN THEY WERE SCARED BY THE NOISE.**

6. What/ you/ do/ when/ the earthquake/ happen/ yesterday?

**WHAT DID YOU DO WHEN THE EARTHQUAKE WAS HAPPENING YESTERDAY?**

7. I/ run/ to/ catch/ the bus/ when/ I/ see/ Jim.

**I WAS RUNNING TO CATCH THE BUS WHEN I SAW JIM.**

8. When/ you/ meet/ James/ last night/ ,/ what/ he/ wear?

**WHEN YOU MET JAMES LAST NIGHT, WHAT WAS HE WEARING?**

9. Some people/ chat/ while/ others/ play/ games/ at/ the party/ last/ night.

**SOME PEOPLE WERE CHATTING WHILE OTHERS WERE PLAYING GAMES AT THE PARTY LAST NIGHT.**

10. It/ rain/ at this time/ yesterday/ so/ we/ cancel/ the barbecue

**IT WAS RAINING AT THIS TIME YESTERDAY SO WE CANCELED THE BARBECUE.**

### 11. Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng.

#### A beautiful day

Yesterday was so nice a day. Jane (1) \_\_\_\_\_ up so early. The sun (2) \_\_\_\_\_ brightly and the birds (3) \_\_\_\_\_ on the tree. Jane was so happy because today she went to meet her old friend. Jane's friend invited her to his new apartment with some other friends. When Jane came, everyone was sitting in the living room and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ passionately with each other. As she walked in, she (5) \_\_\_\_\_ by her friend. They had a lot to tell the other (6) \_\_\_\_\_ they had not met for ages. Jane came home with a smile on her face since her friend (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to contact regularly.

- |                       |                     |                   |                        |
|-----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <b>A. woke</b>     | B. was waking       | C. stayed         | D. was staying         |
| 2. <b>A. shone</b>    | B. was shining      | C. was shone      | D. shined              |
| 3. A. twitters        | <b>B. twittered</b> | C. was twittering | D. were twittering     |
| 4. A. talked          | <b>B. talking</b>   | C. talks          | D. was talked          |
| 5. A. welcomed        | B. was welcoming    | C. welcomes       | <b>D. was welcomed</b> |
| 6. A. although        | <b>B. because</b>   | C. however        | D. so                  |
| 7. <b>A. promised</b> | B. was promising    | C. promise        | D. was promised        |

12. Đọc bài đọc dưới đây và điền T (True) trước câu trả lời đúng với nội dung bài đọc, điền F (False) trước câu trả lời không đúng với nội dung bài đọc.

#### What are myths, legends and folk tales

Once upon a time, long, long ago, there lived some really great storytellers. Their stories have been passed down, retold, translated, adapted and, more recently, written down, because everyone loves good stories. These stories probably include, myths and folktales.

A legend is usually based on a true event in the past. Legend usually have a real hero at the centre of the story and they are often set in fantastic place. The story will have been passed on from person to person, sometimes over a very long period of time.

A myth is not quite the same as a legend. Sometimes a myth is loosely based on a real event but, more often than not, it is a story that has been created to teach people about something very important and meaningful. Myths are often used to explain the world and major events, which, at the time, people were not able to understand- earthquakes, floods, volcanic, eruptions, the rising and setting of the sun, illness and death.

Folktales are usually stories that have been passed down from generation to generation in spoken form. Often we do not know who was the original author and it is possible that some stories might have been concocted around a campfire by a whole group of people. It is quite normal to discover that there are many versions

of the tale, some very similar but others may have only one or two characters in common and take place in totally different settings.

  T   1. In legends, heroes are set in fantastic places.

  F   2. Amongst legends, myths and folktales, only legends are based on true event in the past.

  F   3. Myths are created only for entertainment.

  T   4. Earthquakes, floods and volcanic eruptions are explained in myths.

  T   5. Folktales may be invented around a campfire by a whole group of people.

  F   6. Folk tales have only one version.

  F   7. Folktales are usually passed in written form.